

The new

بِسْمِ اللَّهِ الرَّحْمَنِ الرَّحِيمِ

OK 2022

من أجلكم تعلمنا ولكم ما تعلمنا

second Year

الصف الثاني الثانوي

..... / الاسم

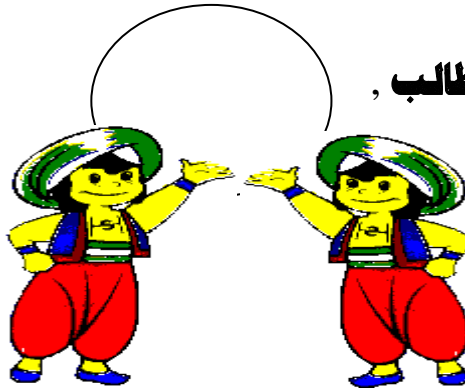
..... / العنوان

..... / الامنية

..... / كيفية التحقيق

..... / في حالة فقدان الكتيب برجاء الاتصال بـ

رقم الطالب ،



Unit 1

Staying healthy



| | | | | | |
|-------------------------------------|----------------------|-------------------|--------------------|--------------------------|------------------------|
| health | صحة | poster | ملصق | lock | يقفل \| قفل |
| infection | عدوى | do first aid | يعمل اسعافات اوليه | press down | يضغط لاسفل |
| perform | يجري \| يقوم ب | injured | مصاب | rise up | يرتفع لاعلي |
| react | يتفاعل | emergency service | خدمة | instructions | تعليمات |
| severe | شديد \| خطير | check | يفحص | appear | يظهر |
| technique | تقنية | area | منطقة | Covid -19 = corona virus | |
| cardiopulmonary resuscitation (CPR) | تنفس صناعي | injuries | اصابات | get ill | يمرض |
| pump | يضخ \| مضخة | awake | مستيقظ | leaf \ leaves | ورقة شجر |
| heart | قلب | bleeding | نازف | a cold | نزلة برد |
| damage | تلف | injury | اصابه | cough | سعال \| كحه |
| athletes | لاعبين قوي | shoulder | كتف | stay up late | يسهر لوقت متأخر |
| trophy | غنيمة-كأس-نصب تذكاري | shout | يصيح غضبا | fast food | اطعمة سريعة |
| sudden death | موت مفاجيء | normal breathing | تنفس طبيعي | persuade | يقنع |
| responsibility = charge | | lying on | راقد علي | persuasive | مقنع |
| care for \ about | يهتم ب | flat surface | سطح مستوي | perfect | كامل - تام |
| put on | يضع مرهم \| كريم | place = put | يضع | do a course | ياخذ دورة \| كورس |
| gloves | قفازات | chest | صدر | brilliant | متألق |
| bandage | ضمادة | encourage | يشجع | champion | بطل رياضي |
| wrap | يطوي \| يلف | brain | مخ | expert | خبير |
| tight | ضيق | immune system | جهاز مناعي | fantastic | رائع |
| kits | اطقم \| معدات \| ادوات | fight | يحارب \| يقاتل | a play | مسرحيه |
| available | متوفر | boost | يعزز | a character | شخصيه |
| lungs | الرئتين | cell | خلية | an act | فصل مسرحي \| بند \| قرار |
| muscles | عضلات | organ | عضو | a scene | مشهد |
| divide | يقسم | virus | فيروس | kingdom | مملكة |
| riches | ثروات | foolish | احمق | marry to | يتزوج من |
| duke | دوق | honest | امين | shout about | يصيح في |
| give away | يتبرع | power | قوة - طاقة محرکه | sword | سيف |
| decide | يقرر | title | لقب | beauty | جمال |
| | | decision | قرار | answer to | رد \| اجابة |

Definitions

| | | |
|------------------|--------|--|
| infection | عدوى | a disease caused by a virus or bacteria. |
| perform | يؤدي | : to do an action |
| react | يستجيب | : do something because something has been done |
| severe | جاد | : serious × mild |

| | | |
|----------------------|---------------|---|
| technique | تقنية | : a way of doing something with a skill. |
| boost | يعزز | : to help someone or something get better or improve. |
| cell | خلية | : The smallest separate part of an animal or a plant. |
| immune system | جهاز المناعة | : a way that your body protects you from disease. |
| organ | عضو | : A part of your body that performs a job. |
| virus | فيروس | : a very small living thing that causes disease |
| a play | مسرحية | A piece of writing that is written for acting in a theatre. |
| a character | شخصية | A person that an actor plays. |
| an act | فصل في مسرحية | A larger part of a play . |
| a scene | مشهد | A small part of a play which happens in one place. |

Prepositions & Expressions

| | | | |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------------|----------------------|
| stay strong & healthy | يبقى قويا \| بصحة جيدة | lock your fingers | يقفأ أصابعه |
| help .....+(to) infinitive | يساعد ان | press down | يضغط لأسفل |
| help .....with +(n.) | يساعد في | allow ....to | يسمح ان |
| help in + (n/v-ing .) | يساعد في | do a course | يأخذ كورس |
| make sure | يتأكد | do first aid | يقوم بإسعاف أولي |
| check the area | يفحص المنطقة حول | stop + v-ing | يتوقف عن |
| move closer to | يتحرك اقرب الي | stop to + infinitive | يتوقف لكي يفعل |
| seem to + infinitive | يبدو ان | educate ....about | يتقن \| يعلم |
| seem + adjective | يبدو | disagree about | يرفض بخصوص |
| check for | يفحص لاجل | disagree with | لا يتفق مع |
| know how to | يعرف كيف ان | get + adjective(ill) | يصبح مريض |
| start \ begin + to + inf | يبدأ | no need for | لا حاجة ل |
| start \ begin + v-ing | يبدأ | encourage ...to | يشجع ان |
| find out | يكشف ان | divide into | يقسم الي |
| sound + adjective | يبدو ان | a third of | ثلث |
| lying on their back | راقد علي ظهره | stay up | يسهر |
| give .....away | يتبرع \| يمنح | think of / about | يفكر في |
| tell ...what to do | يخبر ما ان | spend time + v-ing | يقضي وقتا |
| forget about | ينسي امر | take up | يبدأ - يقبل القيام ب |
| hear from | يتلقى رسائل- اخبار | get on | يركب وسيله |
| rise up | يعلو | pull out | ينزع |
| fall down | يسقط | | |

Derivatives

| verb | noun | adjective |
|-------------|---------------------------|------------|
| get healthy | health | healthy |
| infect | infection /infectiousness | infectious |

| | | | | |
|----------------|--------------|---|----------------------|-----------------------|
| perform | يؤدي/يعزف | performer | عازف/ اداء | ..... |
| do damage | يدمر | damage | دمار | damaged / damaging |
| wrap | يغلف | wrapper | مغلف | wrapped |
| decide | يقرر | decision | قرار | decisive |
| injure | يجرح | injury | جرح | injured |
| encourage | يشجع | encouragement | تشجيع | encouraging |
| empower | يزود بالطاقة | power | قوة - طاقة | powerful |
| persuade | يقنع | persuasion | اقناع | persuasive |
| get ill / sick | يمرض | illness / sickness | مرض | ill / sick |
| beautify | يجمل | beauty | جمال | beautiful |
| act | يتصرف | action / actor / actress | تصرف/ ممثل/م مثلة | ..... ..... |
| characterize | يميز | character /characteristic | شخصية/ميزة | ..... ..... |
| marry | يتزوج | married | متزوج | marriage |
| react | يتصرف | reaction | تصرف | ..... |
| educate | يعلم | education | تعليم | educated |
| immunize | يحصن | immunity /immunization | تحصين | immunized |

Words, synonyms and antonyms

| Word | Meaning | Synonyms | Antonyms | Meaning |
|-----------|-------------|-------------------------------------|--|----------------------|
| health | صحة | soundness wellness | disease illness | مرض |
| flat | مسطح / مستو | straight / level smooth | rough/bumpy broken | خشن / غير مستقيم |
| infection | عدوى | contagion disease illness | sterility sanitation / health purification | تعقيم صحة نقاء |
| injury | اصابة | wound | remedy/cure | علاج |
| perform | يقوم ب | do/act /present | fail / avoid | يتوقف / يفشل |
| press | يضغط | squeeze | release | يطلق |
| severe | شديد / خطير | acute / serious extreme / tough | gentle | لطيف / بسيط |
| severe | عنيف / قوى | fierce / violent | mild | معتدل |
| normal | طبيعي | usual / regular ordinary/average | abnormal unusual | غير طبيعي |
| normal | عاقل / سوى | sane / rational | insane/irrational | غير عقلاني |
| normal | عاقل / سوى | sane / rational | insane/irrational | غير عقلاني |

| | | | | |
|---------------|----------------|------------------------------|--------------|-------------|
| react | يتفاعل | proceed | cease | يتوقف |
| collaboration | تعاون / اشتراك | Participation partnership | isolation | عزلة |
| examination | فحص / اختبار | observation | negligence | اهمال |
| guide | يوجه / يرشد | advise | misguide | يسئ التوجيه |
| skill | مهارة | proficiency | incompetence | عدم كفاءة |
| tight | ضيق | Narrow / close / strained | loose | مفكك / واسع |
| immediately | في الحال | Instantly / soon | later | فيما بعد |

Don't get confused

| | | | |
|-----------|-----------------------|--------|--------------------|
| breathe | يتنفس | breath | نفس |
| organ | عضو في الجسم | member | عضو في مجموعه |
| boost | يعزز | boast | يفتخر - يتباهي |
| technique | تقنيه تحتاج الي تدريب | method | طريقه متعارف عليها |
| soup | شورية | soap | صابون |
| meal | وجبة | diet | نظام غذائي |
| menu | قائمة طعام | list | قائمة (1-2-3) |
| dish | طبق- وجبة | plate | طبق |

- 1) -I can't (**breathe**-breath) well here.
- 2) -I think his (**breath**-breathe) need CPR.
- 3) -The brain is the most important (member-**organ**).
- 4) -Studying more (**boosts**-boosts) your level.
- 5) -She always (boosts-**boasts**) about her family.

Language notes

***Experience** خبرة (لا تعد) *** experiment** تجربة معملية
expert (in \ at \ on) خبير في

- 1- The teacher showed us how to do an important **experiment**.
- 2- He had the qualifications and **experience** to do great things.

Headline عنوان أخبار – جريدة **title** عنوان كتاب\ لقب
address عنوان منزل او بريد الكتروني

All I want is to keep the **title** of king.

Part of + شيء لا ينفصل
a part of = شيء ينفصل

♣ part of a team
a part of this cake.

لاحظ هذه الكلمات مع fall

Fall (asleep / ill / silent / vacant / unconscious)

Care for / about = look after يرعى / يعتني بـ -

Care for = want يريد

Care about something يهتم

Who will care for me when I am old?

-Do you **care for** a cup of tea?

- He doesn't **care about** his studies.

- do / carry out / perform an operation: يقوم بإجراء عملية جراحية
- Have an operation: تجرى له عملية جراحية

- She is **having** an **operation** on her heart.

- Surgeons **do operations** on people in hospitals.

Persuade

يقنع شخص برأي / اعتقاد **convince** يقنع شخص ان يتصرف

He **convinced** me that he was right.

It wasn't easy, but I **persuaded** him to do the right thing.

♦ الصفة إما أن تسبق الاسم أو تلي بعض الأفعال مثل To Be ولكن الصفات التالية لا تستخدم قبل الاسم أبداً ولكن تستخدم بعد be وأفعال مثل seem / look / feel

afraid / awake / asleep / alone / alight / absent/alive

The boy **was afraid**. She **is still awake**.

• She was delighted with the news.

• Thank you for a delightful evening.

✓ **Special** متميز **Private** خاص (ملاكي)

• They always made a special effort at Christmas'

• He protects his private life and private feelings very closely.'

✓ **Spend time + (v-ing)** Ex : he spent most of his time surfing the internet.

✓ **Spend money on** Ex : she spent her money on clothes.

❖ **Dessert** حلويات **desert** صحراء \ يهجر

✓ الصفة تأتي بعد الموصوف مع الكلمات الآتية :

✓ Something \ anything \ everything \ nothing \ someone \ anyone \ everyone \ none \ somebody \ anybody \ everybody \ nobody \ somewhere \ anywhere \ everywhere \ nowhere

Ex : You have to get something ready to eat .

❖ **Be right to \ have a \ the right to**

⊗ **Right (adj.) = correct** EX: They are right to think positively.

⊗ **a / the right (n.)** EX: The public has the right to know about this

❖ **Celebrate** يحتفل **commemorate** يحيى ذكرى

- ✓ I always celebrate my birthday by going to dinner.
- ✓ We commemorate those who lost their lives in 1973 war.

١ يمكن تحويل بعض الأفعال إلى أسماء بإضافة (-ance - ion)

| | | | |
|---------|------------|-------------|-------|
| act | يتصرف | action | تصرف |
| operate | يجري عملية | operation | عملية |
| infect | يعدى | infection | عدوى |
| guide | يرشد | guidance | ارشاد |
| allow | يسمح | allowance | سماح |
| perform | يؤدي | performance | اداء |

do

| | | | |
|--------------|----------------------|--------------|-----------------------------|
| do an action | يقوم بعمل شئ | do exercises | يتمرن |
| do first aid | يقوم بالسعافات اوليه | do CPR | يقوم بالانعاش القلبي الرئوي |
| do a sport | يمارس رياضه | | |

Have

| | | | |
|----------------------|---------------------|-----------------------|--------------------------|
| have a healthy heart | لديه قلب سليم | have a responsibility | لديه مسئوليه |
| have flu | يعاني من الانفلونزا | have good hygiene | يتبع قواعد النظام الشخصي |
| have severe injuries | لديه اصابات بالغه | | |

Get

| | | | |
|------------------|---------------------------|-------------|--------------------|
| get a cold | يصاب بنزله برد | get a virus | يصاب بعدوي فيروسيه |
| get an infection | يصاب بمرض معدي | get better | يتحسن |
| get enough sleep | يحصل علي قدر كاف من النوم | get money | يحصل علي مال |

Expressions

| | | | |
|--------------------|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| suggest a solution | يقدم حل | miss the chance | يفوت الفرصه |
| perform/ do CPR | يقوم بالانعاش القلبي الرئوي | do / perform the first aids | يقوم بعمل الاسعافات الاوليه |
| first aid kit | صندوق الاسعافات الاوليه | send blood around | يضخ الدم خلال |

Exercises

1-Don'tthe chance or you will regret.

a-gets b-miss c-cause d-make

2-My dad always.....solutions to our problems.

a-does b-suggest c-carries d-plays

3-Hesome exercises every day.

a-does b-makes c-brings d-cooks

4-CRR iswhen someone can't breath

a-made b-done c-had d-written

5-You'll.....the virus if you don't follow the hygienic rules

a-make b-do c-get d-reform

6-He.....some fatal mistakes

a-did

b-made

c-brought

d-played

7-It's very necessary to.....the first aid

a-perform

b-do

c-makes

d-a&b

Infection

| | | | |
|---------------------------|---------------|--------------------------|------------|
| suffer from infection | يعانى من عدوي | treat/fight an infection | يكافح عدوي |
| get/ develop an infection | يصاب بعدوي | spread an infection | ينشر عدوي |
| serious infection | عدوي شديدة | clear up an infection | يزيل عدوي |
| serve infection | عدوي شديدة | a cutes infection | عدوي شديدة |

lie, lay, lain

- don't **lie** in the sun for too long.

lie, lay, lain

يقع

- the house **lies** in a small valley.

lie, lay, lain

يتبعثر

- toys were **lying** all over the bedroom floor.

lie, lied, lied

يكذب

- she **lied** to her parents about where she was on Friday.

lay, laid, laid

تبيض

- a hen can **lay** a few eggs per week, i think.

lay, laid, laid

يضع

- he **laid** his hand on my shoulder.

cell

- ⊗ prisoners must spend twenty-two hours a day in their **cells**. زنزانة
- ⊗ - Red blood **cells** carry oxygen around the body. كرات الدم
- ⊗ - The police have recently attacked a terrorist **cell**. مجموعة - خلية

severe

- Spending the winter in the mountains was a **severe** test of their determination. محنة - امتحان قاسي
- ⊗ - My mom has rather **severe** taste in clothes. متشدد
- ⊗ When she got home late, he found his mother waiting for him with a **severe** look on her face. متجهم - عبوس

boost

- ⊗ - Recently, the company has achieved a **boost** in sales. زيادة
- ⊗ - Getting a new car from her parents was a **boost** for Rose. مساندة - دعم
- ⊗ The company needs to find ways to **boost** production. يزيد - يحسن

check

- ✿ - I'm going to pay the bill with a check. شيك
- ✿ - The diners asked for the check. فاتورة الحساب
- ✿ - The technician is going to perform a check on the car. فحص
- ✿ The airport staff checked my hand luggage. يفتش
- ✿ Check the box that says "I accept". يضع علامة صح
- ✿ If you're looking for the umbrella, check in the closet. - يلقي نظرة -

Back

- ✿ Please read the text on the back of the paper. خلف
- ✿ - You should back your argument with facts. يساند - دَعِمَ
- ✿ They show the programme three times a day, often back to back. على التوالي

press

- ✿ The more you press a wet sponge, the more water you will get out of it. يعصر
- ✿ The prime minister's memo was leaked to the press. الصحافة
- ✿ I need to press these trousers. They're all rumpled. يكوى

Come off

- ✿ - Ali came off his bike as he rounded the last corner, but wasn't badly hurt. يسقط من على
- ✿ - I thought your performance came off really well. - ينجح - يبلى بلاءا حسنا
- ✿ - Dave came off heroin two years ago. يتوقف عن تعاطي

sound

- ✿ - He's in sound health for his age. سليم - جيد
- ✿ - That's a sound idea. منطقي - معقول
- ✿ - Buying shares in that company may not be a sound investment. آمن
- ✿ - The firefighter sounded the alarm. يطلق - يرن

Choose the correct answer

- 1- His plans to start his own business off. He was happy.
a) did b) put c) made d) came
- 2- It was two thirty when the bell for dinner.
a) silenced b) founded c) sounded d) seemed
- 3- the oranges onto the juicer to make a healthy drink.
a) Press b) Release c) Compress d) Express
- 4- There is an index in the of the book.

- a) peak b) pick c) pack d) back
- 5- A lot of people try to come off smoking. The verb "come off" means
- a) try b) stop c) increase d) addict
- 6- The book he gave me is full of advice. I'll take it.
- a) passive b) silly c) bad d) sound
- 7- I'll need to my suit before going to the party.
- a) squeeze b) shrink c) wet d) press
- 8- I think the door is locked, but I'll have to check. Check here means
- a) doubt b) inspect c) test d) make sure
- 9- "Do you have these shoes in a larger size?" "I don't know. Let me check."
- Check here means
- a) hear b) listen c) take a look d) take a bath
- 10- I'll have to check with the manager before I can let you in. Check here means
- a) look at b) make sure c) listen to d) talk to
- 11- The does not always report the truth.
- a) stress b) newspapers c) press d) radios
- 12- All the workers asked for a in salary
- a) arouse b) increase c) decrease d) boost
- 13- Alice's father was a man who expected his children to obey him at all times.
- a) server b) severe c) kind d) merciful
- 14- If you need to reach me, just call my
- a) cell b) seal c) sail d) soil
- 15- She won the annual competition two times back to
- a) front b) back c) behind d) below

How to perform first aid

- 1) If you find an ill or injured person, you must check the area around him/her first to make sure it isn't dangerous. Then move closer to the person and look carefully at them. Do they seem to be very ill? Do they have severe injuries?
- 2) If the person is awake but not bleeding, you have to ask them how they feel and what happened. Check their body for signs of injury or infection. You don't have to touch the person's body to do this.
- 3) If the person doesn't reply, touch their shoulder or their foot and shout to see if they react, and remember to check for normal breathing.
- 4) If the person isn't breathing, someone must call the 'emergency' service immediately.
- 5) If you know how to perform CPR, you have to do this to help the person start breathing again. However, you mustn't do CPR unless the person is lying on their back on a flat surface such as the floor.

- 6) **Place** your other hand **on** the centre of the person's chest. Put your other hand on **top** of the first hand and **lock** your fingers together. **Make sure** that your shoulders are **above** your hands.
- 7) You **don't have to press down** on the person's **chest** very much- only five to six centimetres. Keep your hands on their chest and allow it to **rise up** again. You have to do this 100 to 120 times a minute until the person starts **breathing** again

Choose the correct answers

Yesterday the police **1) has to / had to** help a robber who couldn't get down from a tree. Jim Sly went into the house of **2) 80-year-old / 80-years old** Emily Bishop while she was **3) asleep / sleep**. Her dog, Rover, woke up and ran after Sly. The dog could run fast **4) but / so** Sly was able to get into the garden and up the tree. Emily said, 'The man **5) needn't have / didn't have to** run away. Rover is a very nice dog. He **should have** said Hello and **6) gave / given** him a biscuit.

Choose the correct answers

Taking a pulse is **1) the / a** very important part of heart health checks. It measures the **2) number / amount** of heart beats **3) in / per** minute, assesses if the pulse is regular **4) and / or** not, and identifies the strength of the pulse. Your nurse or doctor may check your **5) plus / pulse**, or you can check it by **6) you / yourself**.

Choose the correct answers

First Aid knowledge is **1) valuable / useless** for both individuals and community. It enables you to **2) assist / avoid** persons who become **3) healthy / injured** in case of an accident or **4) normal / emergency** situation until help arrives. First Aid skills can **5) apply / be applied** at home, the workplace or in public locations, therefore the more First Aid experienced people there are in a community, the **6) safer / safest** that community becomes.

Choose the correct answer

- The new Ola is trying seems to be working; she lost three pounds last week.
a) feed b) food c) bite d) diet
- I never the chance to watch football. It's fantastic.
a) win b) lose c) miss d) take
- Wise people try to keep their professional life completely from their private life.
a) united b) separate c) attached d) linked
- The human brain is an incredibly complicated
a) organism b) organic c) member d) organ
- I was walking down the street when, all of a, it started raining.
a) sudden b) suddenly c) sadden d) sadness
- The government hopes its efforts in the field of industry will the economy.
a) demolish b) boost c) beast d) boot
- Very few people care the issue of global warming.
a) for b) on c) in d) about
- The local authority is working in with the police to reduce car crime.
a) invention b) invitation c) sensation d) collaboration
- I misplaced my keys, so I'll have to look for them.
a) into b) out c) around d) in
- He is so poor that he has no raincoat to himself from the rain.
a) react b) protect c) attract d) expose
- The footballer career was cut short by a leg injury.
a) athlete b) athletics c) athletic d) poetic
- The doctor lightly down on her stomach to feel the baby move.
a) released b) pressed c) missed d) stressed

13. He his fingers around her wrist and refused to let go.
 a) mocked b) shocked c) blocked d) locked
14. Nearly 10% of the Earth's is covered by ice.
 a) surface b) roof c) depth d) height
15. Ali has lost his job and his wife left him, but he keeps going; his..... is remarkable
 a) resistance b) obedience c) resilience d) silence
16. To avoid problems, always bend your knees when you lift heavy objects.
 a) stomach b) kidney c) eye d) back
17. We are glad that Sara's at school has greatly improved.
 a) romance b) importance c) performance d) violence
18. Your is the front part of your body between your neck and your stomach
 a) fist b) chest c) back d) eyelash
19. When he arrived home, he saw his wife lying on the kitchen
 a) floor b) flour c) surface d) ceiling
20. Poor hygiene can increase the danger of
 a) deflection b) protection c) prevention d) infection
21. We provide these services because the of our employees is important to us.
 a) wellness b) disease c) illness d) sickness
22. She poured the guest a cup of tea and it on the table.
 a) misplaced b) placed c) pleased d) lifted
23. After the accident, she was taken to hospital with serious head.....
 a) treatment b) injuries c) cures d) aids
24. If you're sick you should stay home to avoid other people in the office.
 a) infecting b) protecting c) treating d) healing
25. Some people claim that this herb has value for treating pain.
 a) poetic b) tragic c) therapeutic d) romantic
26. The firefighters must quickly when they hear the alarm.
 a) escape b) deny c) attract d) react
27. in the soil help break down organic material.
 a) Seeds b) Insects c) Bacteria d) Worms
28. You can take measures to reduce crime in your area.
 a) attentive b) attractive c) inventive d) preventive
29. When I went into his room, he was on the bed smoking a cigarette.
 a) laying b) flying c) lying d) sneezing
30. Make sure that the ground is enough to put a chair on.
 a) fainting b) flat c) curved d) bumpy
31. I usually find it difficult to stay during boring lessons.
 a) awake b) asleep c) boring d) dizzy
32. 'Did you lock the front door?' 'I think so, but I'd better sure.'
 a) make b) do c) perform d) react
33. It's for most students to feel nervous before an exam.
 a) formal b) normal c) informal d) abnormal
34. A team of six scientists the experiment last week.
 a) performed b) formed c) informed d) permitted
35. Workers in the services are forbidden from striking.
 a) informal b) trivial c) emergency d) pregnancy
36. My thumb is; I must have accidentally cut myself.
 a) feeding b) vomiting c) bleeding d) swallowing
37. Some people think that crying is a of weakness.
 a) signal b) sign c) design d) resign
38. There are various for dealing with environmental pollution.

- a) technical b) method c) techniques d) way
39. Messi is a great , a true inspiration to her team members.
- a) criminal b) athletics c) athletic d) athlete
40. The boys denied any for the damage to the TV.
- a) response b) responsibility c) responsible d) irresponsible
41. The lifeguard pulled the little child out of the swimming pool and began.....
- a) etc. b) VIP c) CPR d) CV
42. This illness is caused by bacteria not a ?
- a) virus b) versus c) minus d) plus
43. When I was ill, mom up all night by my bedside.
- a) lived b) played c) awoke d) stayed
44. After taking vaccinations, children develop to a disease.
- a) immune b) immunity c) immunize d) unity
45. I'm sorry you are sick and I hope you better soon.
- a) made b) did c) stay d) get
46. After the final match, the winning team captain held the In the air.
- a) virus b) knife c) trophy d) atrophy
47. The pills might have helped him, if only he'd taken them
- a) regularly b) regular c) irregular d) regularity
48. My family decided to go on a trip to Luxor.
- a) two-days b) two-day c) two days d) two-day's
49. The police didn't have any evidence that he had committed the crime.
- a) passive b) persuasion c) persuade d) persuasive
50. He called me bad names. I tried to stay and just ignore him.
- a) angry b) calm c) palm d) calmness
51. Human Rights groups are calling setting all political prisoners free.
- a) from b) out c) in d) for
52. My sister took painting for a while, but soon lost interest.
- a) up b) in c) on d) off
53. Shady had huge because he used to go to the gym.
- a) hearts b) ears c) muscles d) bones
54. You tired. I think it's better for you to get some rest.
- a) found b) pound c) sound d) voice
55. The next person who gets the bus will have to stand, because there are no seats left.
- a) onto b) out of c) off d) on
56. During flu season, it's important to keep your immune strong to avoid getting sick.
- a) link b) system c) organization d) stem
57. "Is that a big enough piece of pie?" "Yes, it's, thanks."
- a) perfect b) dull c) tasteless d) dirty
58. The school's director decided to send the student away as he doesn't like the way he
- a) befriends b) belongs c) behaves d) believes
59. Being given first at the scene of the accident probably saved his life.
- a) aid b) said c) paid d) laid
60. He wouldn't have given you the job in the first if he didn't think you could do it.
- a) phase b) place c) position d) location

Grammar

| - Necessity الضرورة | |
|--------------------------|--|
| إثبات | نفي |
| in the present | |
| 1- Must + inf | - don't / doesn't have to + inf |
| 2- Have/ has to | |
| 3- need / s to + inf | - needn't + inf don't/doesn't need to + inf |

- today is off work, so we (have to – **don't have to**) get up early.
- He (**must** – doesn't have to) do the homework.
- She (has to – **doesn't need to**) buy more clothes, she has already had a lot.
- He (must – **doesn't have to**) answer all questions as he can answer 5 from 6.

Necessity in the past الضرورة في الماضي

It was necessary

had to + inf

it wasn't necessary

didn't have to + inf

didn't need to + inf

needn't have + p.p

ذكي
ذكي
حمار

- He (**had to** – didn't have to) apologize to his friend, he insulted him.
- She (had to – **didn't need to**) past the letter yesterday as she can past it today.
- I'm angry, he (**had to** – should – didn't have to) tell me the time of the conference. I missed it.

في المستقبل

إثبات

نفي

| | |
|---|--|
| - Must/ have to/ will have to + inf - will need to | - won't have to - won't need to + inf |
|---|--|

- He (**will have** – has) to visit that man tomorrow .
- He (will – **won't**) have to get up early tomorrow it's holiday .

ركز مع الدرس

1- Have to / Has to

مضطر أن

- تستخدم (Have to / Has to) للتعبير عن إلزام مفروض علينا وليس أماما اختيار
- Have to / Has to = It is necessary to do..... (We have no other choice)

- You **have to** show your passport when you leave the country.
- I can't go out. I **have to** work.
- My children **have to** go to school next year.

- يمكن استخدام **have to** في الأزمنة المختلفة (ما عدا الأزمنة المستمرة)

- I **had to** work six days a week. = - It **was necessary** for me **to** work six days a week.
- My flight is at six in the morning. I'll **have to** get up early.
- Have you ever **had to** go to hospital?

- تستخدم (do / does) مع (Have to / Has to) في السؤال و النفي

- Do you have to put on a uniform at school?
- She doesn't have to buy a new dictionary for school?

- يمكن أن نستخدم (have got to / has got to) بدلا من (have to / has to)

- I have got to go to work on time.
- She is late for the meeting, she has got to take a taxi.

- نستخدم (have got to / has got to) في السؤال بدون فعل مساعد

- Have you got to be at the office every day?
- Has that man got to carry all the boxes by himself?

2- Don't / Doesn't have to / Don't / Doesn't need to / needn't :

It is **NOT** necessary to do.....

غير مضطر - لا داعي أن

- She isn't late for school so she **doesn't have to / needn't** hurry.
- When you are on holiday, you **needn't** go to bed early.
- She **doesn't have to** work on Saturday.

3- Didn't have to = didn't need to = It wasn't necessary to..., so we didn't

لم نضطر أن

- نستخدم هذه الأفعال للتعبير عن عدم الضرورة في الماضي (حدث **لَمْ يَتِمَّ** في الماضي لأنه لم يكن ضرورياً)

- We **didn't have to** go to school yesterday. It was a holiday.
- I **didn't have to** do the shopping yesterday. My brother did it.

4- Needn't have + PP. : It wasn't necessary to....., but we did

- يستخدم هذا الفعل للتعبير عن عدم الضرورة في الماضي (حدث **تَمَّ** في الماضي على الرغم من كونه لم يكن ضرورياً)

- You **needn't have brought** your umbrella. It's not going to rain.
- لاحظ الفارق في المعنى في الجمل الآتية
- I **didn't have to buy** more bread. We already have a lot.
(I **didn't buy** bread because we have some.)
- I **needn't have bought** more bread. We already have a lot.
(I **bought** bread, but it was not necessary because we have some.)

لم يكن ضروري و لذا لم يفعل ← **didn't need to / didn't have to**
لم يكن ضروري ولكنه فعل ← **needn't have + p.p**

- He (**didn't have to water** – **needn't have watered**) the garden. Really he did.

must / have to / will have to

- في حالة التعبير عن الضرورة في المستقبل نستخدم

- I **have to get** up early tomorrow.
- I'll **have to** send the fax tomorrow.

- لاحظ الفرق بين استخدام **need to** كفعل ناقص واستخدام **need** كفعل عادي بمعنى يحتاج أو يتطلب

- This job **needs** computer skills.
- I **need to** finish the job early. = I **must** finish it early.

Mustn't + inf.

لا ينبغي أن نستخدم

❖ للتعبير عن شيء غير مسموح أو ممنوع قانوناً / خطير جداً وضار بك .

| | | | |
|---------------------------|-----------------------|------------------|-----------|
| • against the law / rules | ضد القواعد / القوانين | • be forbidden | محظور |
| • be banned | ممنوع | • be not allowed | غير مسموح |
| • No parking /smoking | | | |

- You (don't have to – **mustn't**) eat this food it's sour فاسد .
- You (don't need to – **mustn't**) park here it's not allowed .

- You (don't have to – **mustn't**) take photos . It's a " No photography sign .

تستخدم **mustn't** في النصح الشديد بالنفي وكذلك الأمانة .

- You (**mustn't** – don't have to) spend too much money you will want some for your holiday .

يفضل must

1- warm invitation دعوة حارة بشدة

- you (**must** – have to) come to my party .

2- strong advice نصح قوى

- You (**must** – have to) wash your hands before meals .

3- feelings and wishes مشاعر ورغبات خاصة بنا

- I really (have – **must**) read this story . It's so interesting .

4- a strong reminder تذكيرة لنفسك بقوة مثل الواجبات

- I (**must** – have to) visit my friend who is very ill .

5-Criticizing others

للتعبير عن نقد سلوكيات الآخرين **must** نستخدم

- Must**-have to)you always interrupt me when I'm speaking?

• ركز في الفارق بين الجملتين

- I **have to** stop smoking .It's the doctor's orders

• هنا التوقف عن التدخين هو الخيار الاوحد رغم انه من الشخص نفسه

- I **must** stop smoking .It's the doctor's advice

• عندما نذكر كلمة نصيحه الافضل must

يفضل have to عن need to , must

نستخدم هذه الصيغة عندما نتحدث عن أمور مفروضة علينا في الخارج أى ليس لنا الاختيار نفعليها اضطراراً لأننا لسنا مخيرين في فعلها

- You (**have to** – must) pass your exam to go to the university .
- You (shouldn't – **mustn't**) park here, it's not allowed قوانين
- This is my invitation card, you (should – **must**) come.
- This book is interesting, you (should – **must**) read it.
- You (**must** – should) wear the seat belt, it's a rule.

ينبغي / يجب Should / ought to

1-تستخدم should –ought to لاعطاء النصيحة:

should/shouldn't + inf ought to/ought not to(oughtn't) to +inf

- You **should** work hard to achieve your goal . you **shouldn't waste** your time
 - One **ought to** keep fit . he or she **ought not to** eat unhealthy food
- 2- كما تستخدم should-ought to لتوجيه اللوم او التعبير عن الندم لعدم القيام في الماضي بشيء كان من المفترض القيام به :

Subj.+should /ought to +have +p.p

ندم-كان يجب ان افعل I should have taken my medicine on time
 لو م-كان يجب القيام بذلك you ought to have arrived early

3-وتستخدم I ought not to –shouldn't لتوجيه اللوم او التعبير عن الندم للقيام بشئ في الماضي كان
 من المفترض عدم القيام به:

Subj.+shouldn't/ought not (oughtn't)to+have+p.p

ندم-كان يجب الا افعل ذلك I oughtn't to have shouted at my sister
 لوم-كان من المفترض عدم القيام بذلك you shouldn't have added too much salt
 عندما نجد had to/should have +p.p افني اختيار واحد

| | |
|-------------------------|--|
| Should have +p.p | كان يجب ان يفعل ولكنه لم يفعل و هنا اللوم |
| Had to+inf | كان مضطرا ان يفعل اي انه فعل و هنا ضرورة حدوث شئ في الماضي |

1-He(should have borrowed-had to borrow)some money from his brother . he borrowed from his friend

2-He (should have borrowed-had to borrow)some money from his brother but he gave him just half of the sum

حاجه بسيطه نتذكر بها must و have to

| must | have to | |
|------------|------------|---------------------|
| ✓ الافضل + | ✓ | النصح بشده |
| ✓ | × | الالزام الداخلي |
| ✓ | ✓ الافضل + | الالزام الخارجي |
| ✓ بشكل عام | ✓ بشكل خاص | القوانين بالايجاب |
| mustn't ✓ | × | القوانين بالسلب |
| ✓ الافضل | ✓ | الضروره في المستقبل |
| ✓ | ✓ | الضروره في المضارع |
| ✓ | × | الدعوة |
| ✓ | × | الترشيح |
| ✓ | × | الاستنتاج |
| ✓ | × | تستخدم كفعل مساعد |

- You(must- have to) obey your parent.
- I (must-have to) visit my friend. He is sick.
- There are no abuse I (have to- must) take a taxi.
- You (must-have to) be here before 8 o'clock.
- I (must-have to) meet my uncle tomorrow.
- (must- Do) they have to take this ?
- You (must-have to) come round and visit us.
- The film is very interestingly. You (must-have to) watch it.

Choose the correct answer: practice 1

- youwash the car. The man at the garage will wash it tomorrow.
 a-mustn't b-can't c-might not d-needn't
- you be 18 to drive a car in England
 a-might b)need c-have to d-ought to
- we ...hurry. it only takes ten minutes to the station and we have an hour before the train goes.
 a-mustn't b-can't c-might not d-don't have to
- you 'll buy a ticket before you travel on the train

a-must b-have to c-had to d-has to

- 5- Tarek get the bus to the park. My father can take him in our car

a-mustn't b-needn't to c-doesn't have to d-have to

- 6- At an airport, what do you show before you can leave the country?

a-must b-had to c-have to d-has to

- 7- you to show your passport when you leave the country.\

a-must b-have c-had d-needn't

- 8- Before our next English lesson, what must we For homework?

a-does b-done c-did d-do

- 9- What do you do at school every day? What mustn't you do?

a-have to b-has to c-must d-had to

- 10- Whatyou remember to do this weekend?

a-have b-must c-will have to d- had to

Choose the correct answer: practice2

1. Alibrought food. We already have a lot

a-needn't have b-must not have c-must have d-should have

2. we didn't have a test today so Ifor it last night

a-needn't revise b-didn't have to revise

c-mustn't revise d-needn't have revise

3. -Poor Hany go to hospital yesterday after he hurt his hand.

a-must b- has to c-had to d-needn't

4. Mona..... to take her sunglasses because it was cloudy

a-doesn't need b-needn't c-didn't have d-doesn't have

5. Yunis to do the maths exercise again because he got it all wrong

a-had b-won't have c-didn't have d-doesn't need

6. Theyleave the school yesterday after they heard the fire bell

a-had to b-have to c-has to d- must

7. The studentswritten all those notes. All the information is typed for them

a-didn't have to b-mustn't c-didn't need to d-needn't have

8. In school last week, whyyou have to do P.E?

a-didn't b-won't c-don't d-mustn't

9. What did you.....buy when you went to the bookshop last weekend?

a-must b-had to c-have to d-has to

10. What I have brought to your house yesterday evening?

a-don't b-needn't c-didn't d-don't

11. What did you do recently that youhave done?

a-doesn't b-mustn't c-needn't d-didn't

12. we.....run to the museum because it was already closed when we got there

a-needn't have b-didn't have to c-don't have to d-must

13. Poor Walid broke his leg yesterday andgo to hospital

a-had to b-must c-needn't d-has to

Choose the correct answer: practice3

- Iforget to email my cousin today. It's his birthday

a-mustn't b-needn't c-ought not to d-shouldn't

- the sign in the park says that peoplewalk on the grass.

a-needn't b-might not c-should d-mustn't

- When you go to Alexandria, you visit the library. It's amazing

a-have to b-must c-will d-need

- we've moved to a new house, so youcome round and see it

a-mustn't b- has to c- must d- have to

- we pass our exams to get into university.

a-must have b-mustn't c-don't have to d-have to

- you..... put the newspaper on the oven. It might burn

a-mustn't b-don't have to c-need to d-needn't have

- My sister made a cake . you try it. It's lovely

a-have to b-had to c-must d-needn't

- you..... come and see me tomorrow

a-must b-has to c-had to d-mustn't

Choose the correct answer

- Sorry, I go now. I don't want to be late.
a) must b) have to c) needn't d) didn't have to
- Sorry, I go now. my parents will be angry if I'm late.
a) must b) have to c) needn't d) didn't have to
- At our school, we wear a uniform.
a) don't need b) has got to c) must d) have to
- You cross the roads without looking. It's dangerous.
a) have to b) mustn't c) must d) don't need to
- You turn on the central heating. It's automatic.
a) needn't b) have got to c) doesn't need to d) had to
- The exams are next week. I work harder
a) needn't b) mustn't c) have to d) had to
- Students listen to the teacher or they won't understand.
a) have to b) don't have to c) had to d) mustn't
- We leave now or we'll miss the plane.
a) had to b) must to c) have got to d) has got to
- You to come with us if you don't want to.
a) need b) haven't got c) needn't d) don't have
- I was late this morning because I wait a long time for the bus.
a) needn't b) must c) have to d) had to
- I wear glasses because I can't see very well.
a) had to b) have to c) mustn't d) don't need to
- You read this book. It's really good.
a) must b) have to c) needn't d) don't need
- You go shopping today. We don't need anything.
a) needn't b) don't need c) haven't got d) mustn't
- Every player in a football team have a number.
a) must b) should c) have got to d) needn't
- Doctors sometimes work at the weekend.
a) have to b) have got c) must d) need
- Nowadays in Egypt, pupils learn English at school.
a) have to b) doesn't have to c) need d) had to
- My wife go to work today. It's a holiday.
a) mustn't b) must c) doesn't have to d) doesn't need

18. At a restaurant, you have to pay the bill but you eat everything.
 a) had to b) have to c) mustn't d) don't need to
19. You come to the meeting, but it will be nice if you are there.
 a) have to b) don't have to c) had to d) mustn't
20. You start saving money if you want to retire in few years.
 a) must b) has to c) has got to d) needn't
21. My brother wear a tie in his work, but I do.
 a) mustn't b) doesn't have to c) has got to d) has to
22. You eat healthier and stop smoking, you will feel better.
 a) mustn't b) must c) doesn't have to d) need
23. People mustn't drink and drive cars. It is
 a) optional b) advisable c) permitted d) prohibited
24. John can't come because he work tomorrow.
 a) mustn't b) doesn't have to c) must d) has to
25. She has a big problem. We help her
 a) needn't b) need c) have to d) must
26. You sign a document without reading it first.
 a) mustn't b) don't have to c) must d) ought to
27. Every man do military service in my country. It's obligatory.
 a) needn't b) has to c) have to d) must
28. When do we pay for the next term?
 a) have to b) have got to c) must d) need
29. A pilot train for many years to get a licence.
 a) must b) should c) have got to d) has to
30. Sara work long hours at school?
 a) Does b) Has c) Must to d) Had
31. I get up early on Sundays. I can stay in bed.
 a) needn't b) need c) have to d) must
32. You have a visa to travel to the USA.
 a) got to b) got to have c) got have d) to having
33. My daughter to cook, because I cook for the whole family.
 a) needs b) haven't got c) needn't d) don't have
34. When the party was over, I realized that you cooked so much food as most of it was untouched.
 a) needed b) didn't need c) should have d) needn't have
35. Teachers wear suits for work, but their clothes must be neat and clean.
 a) mustn't b) don't have to c) must d) has to
36. You arrive on time for lessons. It's important not to be late.
 a) need to b) haven't got c) needn't d) have to
37. You eat lunch in the school canteen. Some students prefer to go home for lunch.
 a) needn't b) need c) have to d) must
38. You buy a course book, your teacher will give you one.
 a) mustn't b) have got to c) don't have to d) has to
39. Students..... take an exam at the end of the year.
 a) must b) doesn't have to c) has got to d) have to

40. Don't tell anyone what I said. You keep it a secret.
 a) mustn't b) don't have to c) must d) have to
41. I forget to go shopping today. I have got nothing at home to eat.
 a) must b) should c) had to d) has to
42. The shirt is not dirty. You wash it
 a) needn't b) need c) don't have d) must
43. I get up early tomorrow. the train leaves at 6.
 a) mustn't b) don't have to c) have got to d) had to
44. You wash those tomatoes. They have already been washed.
 a) must b) don't have to c) have got to d) mustn't
45. I understand your situation perfectly. You explain any further.
 a) needn't b) need c) have to d) must
46. It didn't rain, you needn't have taken your umbrella. It was
 a) necessary b) not necessary c) obligatory d) a must
47. I haven't got lots of money; I waste it.
 a) mustn't b) need c) needn't d) have to
48. Do you want me to wait for you? No it's OK, you wait.
 a) mustn't b) don't have to c) need to d) have to
49. This book is very expensive, you look after it very carefully.
 a) must b) shouldn't c) had to d) has to
50. You phone me when you arrive at home but I hope you will.
 a) need to b) haven't got to c) don't need d) have to
51. The baby is asleep, you shout like that.
 a) needn't b) should c) mustn't d) ought to
52. My mother gave me a present for my son, I forget to give it to him.
 a) mustn't b) don't have to c) have got to d) had better
53. There was nobody to help me. I do everything by myself.
 a) must b) shouldn't c) had to d) has to
54. I'm not working tomorrow, so I get up early.
 a) need to b) won't have to c) will have to d) must
55. Steve didn't know how to turn off the computer, so I show him.
 a) need to b) had to c) have d) didn't have to
56. Excuse me a moment - I make a phone call. I won't be long.
 a) have got b) haven't got to c) mustn't d) need
57. I couldn't find the street I wanted. I ask somebody for directions.
 a) must b) should c) had to d) has to
58. It's a No parking area. You park your car here.
 a) needn't b) need c) don't have d) mustn't
59. A man was injured in the accident, but he go. to hospital because it wasn't serious.
 a) had to b) didn't have to c) will have to d) must
60. When Maher starts his new job next month, he travel 50 miles to work every day.
 a) have got b) will have to c) mustn't d) doesn't need

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- Egypt is famous since ancient times for its curative tourism which treats many diseases.

- (a) تشتهر مصر منذ القدم بسياحتها العلاجية التي تعالج الكثير من الأمراض .
 (b) مصر مشهورة لأنه في العصور القديمة كانت السياحة تعالج كثيراً من الأمراض.
 (c) تشتهر مصر منذ القدم بعلاج السياحة وعلاج الكثير من الأمراض .
 (d) مصر مشهورة بالسياحة العلاجية منذ العصور القديمة التي عالجت كثيراً من الأمراض.

2-Since you are ill, I'll ask someone else to clean the upstairs.

- (a) منذ أنك مريض، وأنا سأطلب من شخص آخر تنظيف الطابق العلوى .
 (b) منذ أنك مريض، سأطلب من شخص آخر تنظيف الطوابق العلوية .
 (c) بما أنك مريض، سأطلب من شخص آخر تنظيف الطابق العلوى .
 (d) بما أنك مريض، سأطلب من شخص آخر غسيل الطوابق العلوية.

3-A good role model serves as an example for inspiring and motivating us to work hard to uncover our true inner potentials.

- (a) يعد القدوة الجيدة مثالا يلهمنا ويحفزنا على العمل الجاد للكشف عن إمكاناتنا الداخلية الحقيقية.
 (b) يعتبر دور النموذج الجيد مثالا يلهمنا ويحفزنا على العمل الجاد لمعرفة إمكاناتنا الداخلية الحقيقية.
 (c) يعد النموذج دوراً جيداً يلهمنا ويحفزنا على العمل الجاد لمعرفة طاقاتنا الداخلية الحقيقية.
 (d) يعد القدوة دوراً جيداً يلهمنا ويمكننا من العمل الجاد لمعرفة طاقاتنا الداخلية الصادقة.

4-The policies, plans and development works of the nation can be best implemented by youth.

- (a) يمكن أن ينفذ الشباب الخطط السياسية وأعمال التنمية في البلاد على أفضل وجه .
 (b) يمكن أن ينفذ الشباب سياسات وخطط التنمية والأعمال في البلاد على أكمل وجه .
 (c) يمكن أن ينفذ الشباب سياسات وخطط وأعمال التنمية في البلاد على أفضل وجه .
 (d) يمكن أن يطبق الشباب سياسات البلاد وخطط التنمية والأعمال على أحسن حال.

5-As it is a free-smoking area, you mustn't smoke here.

- (a) على الرغم من أنها منطقة يسمح فيها بالتدخين، يجب عليك ألا تدخن هنا.
 (b) لأنها منطقة خالية من التدخين، يجب عليك ألا تدخن هنا.
 (c) وكأنها منطقة يسمح فيها بالتدخين، ولكن يجب عليك ألا تدخن هنا.
 (d) مع أنها منطقة يسمح فيها بالتدخين، يجب عليك ألا تدخن هنا.

6-Man has invented numerous things to make his life comfortable and entertaining.

- (a) اخترع الإنسان أشياء عديدة لجعل حياته مريحة ومسلية .
 (b) اخترع الإنسان أشياء مسلية لجعل حياته مريحة ومتنوعة .
 (c) اخترع الإنسان أشياء مفيدة لجعل حياته مريحة ومضيافة .
 (d) اخترع الإنسان أشياء فعالة لجعل حياته مريحة وسهلة.

Unit 2

Eating Around the world

| | | | | | |
|---------------------|---------------------|-------------------|--|---------------------|-------------------------|
| amount (n) | كمية | preparation(n) | تجهيز/تحضير | pot(n) | قدر |
| celebrate (v)-ed | يحتفل | prepare | يجهز | personally(adj) | شخصيا |
| celebrations (n) | احتفال | serve (v)-ed | يقدم طعام- شراب | dessert(n) | التحلية |
| eat out(v) | يتناول طعام بالخارج | service | الخدمة في المطعم | old-fashioned | موضة قديمة |
| get together | يتجمع ايلتقى | traditional (adj) | تقليدي | dish(n) | طبق |
| occasion (n) | مناسبة | traditions | تقاليد | eggah(n) | أكلة العجة المصرية |
| a turkey(n) | ديك رومي | Japanese (n) | ياباني | Egyptian food (n) | الطعام المصري |
| beef(n) | لحم بقرى | lunchtime(n) | وقت الغداء | excerpt(n)(v) | مقتبس/اقتبس |
| belief(n) | اعتقاد/أرى | mochi(n) | كعكة الأرز الياباني | expect (v) -ed | يتوقع |
| bowl(n) | سلطانية | nasi goring (n) | وجبة الأرز باللحم والخضار في اندونيسيا | extract(n) | استخراج |
| chopsticks(n) | عودان للأكل الصيني | particular(adj) | خاص | fatta(n) | أكلة الفتة المصرية |
| cornbread(n) | خبز الذرة | personal(adj) | شخصي | foreigner | اجنبي |
| curry(n) | الكاري (بهارات) | old-fashioned | موضة قديمة | ful medames | فول مدمس |
| customer(n) | زبون/عميل | oyster(n) | محار البحر | gather(v)\-ed | يجمع |
| delicious (adj) | لذيذ | nasi goring | وجبة الأرز باللحم والخضار في اندونيسيا | Indonesian(adj) | اندونيسي |
| Mexican(adj) | مكسيكي | personally(adj) | شخصيا | Italian(adj) | إيطالي |
| sweet potatoes(n) | بطاطا | rude(adj) | وقح | products(n) | منتجات |
| thanksgiving day(n) | عيد الشكر | seafood(n) | مأكولات بحرية | pumpkin pie(n) | فطيرة اليقطين/قرع العسل |
| vertically(adv) | عموديا | special(adj) | خاص | questionnaire(n) | استبيان/استفتاء |
| whatever(pronoun) | ايا كان | spoon(n) | ملعقة | relatives(n) | اقارب |
| worry about(v)-ed | يفلق على | survive(v) | ينجو/يبقى على قيد الحياة | native Americans(n) | سكان امريكا الأصليين |
| American cookies(n) | بسكويت امريكي | oyster(n) | محار البحر | noodles(n) | شعرية صيني |
| changes(n) | تغيرات | remember(v)-ed | يتذكر | thinking(n) | التفكير |
| cruel(adj) | قاسي | repeat(v)_ed | يكرر | thought(n) | اعتقاد |
| difficult(adj) | صعب | repetition(n) | تكرار | understand (v) | يفهم |
| exactly(adj) | تماما/بالضبط | simple(adj) | بسيط | welcome(n/v) | يرحب/ترحب |
| French(adj) | فرنسي | smell(n)(v)-ed | رائحة/يشم | whale | حوت |
| grapes(n) | عنب | snack(n) | وجبة خفيفة | midnight(n) | منتصف الليل |
| herring | سمكة الرنجة | takeaway(n) | طعام جاهز | options(n) | خيارات |
| jar(n) | اناء/جرة | tamales(n) | وجبة اللحم المكسيكي | the countryside(n) | الريف |

Definitions

| | | |
|--------------------------|----------------------|---|
| amount (n) | كميه | -a quantity of something. -how much of something there is. |
| celebrate (d) (n) | يحتفل يحيى مناسبه | -do something fun to show that an event is special. |
| eat out | ياكل خارج المنزل | -have a meal outside your home |
| get together | يلتقي | -meet people and spend time with them. -meet with other people. |
| occasion (n) | مناسبه | a time when something special happens. |
| option (n) | خيار بديل | -a choice you can make in a particular situation. |
| personal (adj) | شخصي | -belonging or relating to one person rather than to other people or to people in general. |
| prepare (ed) (v) | يعد - يجهز | -get something ready to eat or use. |
| serve (d) (v) | يخدم | -give someone food or drinks as part of a meal. |
| simple (adj) | بسيط | -not difficult or complicated to do understand. |
| traditional (adj) | تقليدي | -old ways of doing things that don't change. -following a way of doing something that has existed for a long time. |

Antonyms

| | | | |
|-----------|---------|------------|----------|
| optional | اختياري | compulsory | اجباري |
| difficult | صعب | easy | سهل/بسيط |
| native | اصلي | foreigner | اجنبي |
| heavy | ثقل | light | خفيف |
| personal | شخصي | general | عام |
| respect | يحترم | disrespect | يزدرى |

Synonyms

| | | | |
|-------------|--------|--------------------|---------------|
| confused | متحير | puzzled | |
| traditional | تقليدي | conventional | old fashioned |
| personal | شخصي | private | |
| heavy | قوى | strong | forceful |
| strong | حار | spicy | |
| respect | يحترم | obey\follow\regard | |

1- Really this meal has a strong taste. The word strong is the synonym of.....

a-weak

b-forceful

c-spicy

2- respect to obey is personal to.....

a-general

b-local

c-private

3- -people wholaw must be punished.

a-disrespect

b-obey

c-respect

4- -it's not a simple problem .it's aone.

a-easy

b-complicated

c-different

5- -I don't likemeals but light ones.

a-strong

b-overweight

c-heavy

prepositions

| | | | |
|----------------|-----------------|----------------|---------|
| decide on | يحدد | belong to | يخص |
| choose from | يختار من بين | add to | يضيف |
| catch up with | يلحق بـ / يواكب | dig.....out of | يستخلص |
| find out | يكشف | wait for | ينتظر |
| think of/about | يفكر في | come from | يأتي من |

-complete with prepositions:

- 1- -you should add some spicesthis food.
- 2- -I have founda lot about this issue.
- 3- -I have waitedhim a lot.
- 4- -can you choose the best onethese students.

Derivatives

| verbs | | nouns | | adjectives | |
|--------------------|-------|------------------|---------------|--------------------|-------------------|
| believe | يعتقد | Belief/ believer | اعتقاد/ معتقد | believable | قابل للتصديق |
| bore | يمل | boredom | ملل | boring | ممل |
| complicated | يعقد | complication | تعقيد | complicated | معقد |
| confuse | يربك | confusion | ارتباك | confused | مرتبك |
| | | | | confusing | مربك |
| respect | يحترم | respect | احترام | respected | محترم |
| celebrate | يحتفل | celebration | احتفال | celebrated | شخص مشهور احتفالي |
| | | celebrating | | celebratory | |

foods

| | | | |
|---------------------|------------------------|----------------|---------------------|
| dessert | حلوى | pumpkin | نبات يقطين |
| sea foods | مأكولات بحرية | prawns | جمبري كبير |
| shellfish | صدفيات | crimps | جمبري صغير |
| grapes | عنب | herring | الرنجة |
| lamb | لحم ضاني | turkey | ديك رومي |
| nasigoreng | نازي جورينج "اسم اكله" | nuts | مكسرات |
| pasta | مكرونه | snack | وجبة خفيفة |
| sweet potato | بطاطا | tamales | تماليس وجبة مكسيكية |
| cookies | بسكويت | curry | كاري |
| chips | بطاطس شيبسي | beef | لحم بقرى |
| mochi | موتشي "حلوى يابانية" | pie | فطيرة |

event – accident – incident

حدث

حدث خلال فيلم|مسلسل|مباراة|مسرحية

حادث تصادم

- ## occasion - opportunity

احتفال\مناسبه اجتماعية

فرصة – فرصة عمل

● يفوت *miss opportunity

- public - general**

يعرفه كل الناس **general**

-This is a (public –**general**) idea all people know it.

Personal - private

شخصی یخص الشخص

شخصی یخص الشخص - مملوك - مدفوع فيه مال

- بعض الملاحظات القواعديه الزائده على الوحده:**

Let - allowed

-allow مفعول to + inf

-allow V-ing

- ولا يفضل استخدام let في المبنى المجهول والافضل allowed**

حذف رابط الوصل

Who – which – that + فعل مبني للمعلوم =v-ing

Who- which- that + be + p.p (مبني للمجهول) =p.p

Who plays = playing

that grows =growing

-who is called = called

-which is produced = produced

-My friend (who called – called) Alaa helped me a lot.

-The man (who driving- driving) the car is my uncle.

else

نري كلمه else في ثلاث مواضع:

1 -بعد ادوات الاستفهام :

| | | | |
|------------|------|-----------|------|
| who else | ايضا | what else | ايضا |
| where else | ايضا | | |

2-بعد اي صيغه فيها

Some – no – any

Some else -anyone else – nothing else

3 - مع تركيبه Or else والا:

- 1- -I must study, or (other- else) I will fail.
- 2- -I didn't deceive you, someone (other – else) did that.
- 3- -A: My uncle and his wife will come? B: Who (other- else)?

جنسيه + The

الشعب = اسم جنسيه + The

The British = British people

The Spanish = Spanish people

The Egyptian = Egyptian people

The Egyptian الشعب المصري

المصريين the Egyptians

Other / others

other + اسم لا يعد

another + one

another = few + اسم جمع

other + اسم يعد جمع

another + عدد + اسم جمع

others + فعل

-Some people like fish but (other – others) don't.

-Some students like Mr. Nasr but (other – others) students don't. It's human nature.

-I had a cup of tea, can you fetch me (other- another) one.

-I need to see (another- other) two shirts.

😊ملاحظه خفيفه للطلبة الظريفه:

Other + جمع = others

-These shirts are not nice, can you show me any (other – others) ones.

-These shirts are not nice, can you show me ant (other – others) لاحظ عدم وجود اسم

The other one - another one لاحظ اننا نقول

Some other + اسم each other

-They must help each (other – others- another).

-I want to see (other- another) one.

Like

Like يحب - يفضل

like = for example

مثل

Like (adj) = similar to مشابه لـ - مثل

Alike (adj) = similar متشابه

like + اسم

alike + لا يأتي بعدها اسم

- 1) -I (like – alike) my toy very much.
- 2) -Mona is (like- alike) Sarah, she is polite.
- 3) -I have a lot of polite students (like- alike) Alaa and Enjy.
- 4) -Basant and Nehad are (like- alike) they're polite.

لا تنسى التعبير الآتي:

-What is the weather like? ما هي حالة الطقس؟

-I leant out of the window to see what the weather was like.

Like مثل unlike بخلاف

-(Alike – Unlike) Marwa, her mother is short.

Look like يشبه = resemble = take after

-Really Ahmed and Ramy (like- look like) each other.

Don't get confused

| | | | |
|---------------|-------------------|--------------|-------------------------------|
| optional | اختياري | free | حرامجاني / غير مشغول |
| serve | يحترم - يقدم طعام | surf | يركب / الامواج يتصفح على النت |
| grilled | مشوى | fried | مقلي |
| serve | يقدم - يخدم | service | خدمه - يخدم |
| get over | يتغلب علي | get together | يتقابل |
| amount | معدل كميته | number | عدد |
| eat out | يأكل خارج المنزل | find out | يكشف |
| dish | وجبه | plate | طبق |
| stupid | غبي | curious | محب للاستطلاع |
| old-fashioned | ذات طراز قديم | fashionable | علي الموضه |
| person | شخص | personality | شخصيه |
| serve | يقدم - يخدم | service | خدمه - يخدم |
| get over | يتغلب علي | get together | يتقابل |
| amount | معدل كميته | number | عدد |
| eat out | يأكل خارج المنزل | find out | يكشف |
| dish | وجبه | plate | طبق |
| stupid | غبي | curious | محب للاستطلاع |
| old-fashioned | ذات طراز قديم | fashionable | علي الموضه |

person

شخص

personality

شخصية

Expressions & collocations

| | | | |
|----------------------------------|------------------|-------------------------------|---------------------|
| <u>get</u> confused | يرتبك | <u>spend</u> time with | يقضى وقتا مع |
| <u>get</u> together | يتقابل | <u>take</u> place | يحدث |
| <u>get</u> on | يركب وسيلة | <u>serve</u> food | يقدم طعام |
| <u>fall</u> asleep | ينام | <u>show</u> respect | يظهر احترام |
| <u>feel</u> sleep | يشعر بالنعاس | <u>make</u> a pumpkin pie | يعد فطيرة اليقطين |
| <u>go</u> / <u>travel</u> abroad | يسافر | <u>make</u> noise | يحدث ضوضاء |
| <u>feel</u> hungry | يشعر بالجوع | <u>make</u> a choice | يختار |
| <u>feel</u> happy | يشعر بالسعادة | <u>work</u> in a buffet | يعمل في بوفيه/مقصف |
| <u>Feel</u> sad | يشعر بالحزن | <u>have</u> whatever you like | تأخذ ما تريد |
| <u>grow</u> food | يزرع محاصيل | <u>do</u> something | يقوم بعمل شيء |
| <u>make</u> a difference | يحدث تغيير | a <u>bit</u> worried about | قلق قليلا |
| <u>bring</u> good luck | يجلب الحظ السعيد | <u>In different</u> colours | بالألوان مختلفة |
| <u>at</u> all | على الإطلاق | <u>distant</u> past events | أحداث الماضي البعيد |
| <u>at</u> least | على الأقل | <u>on</u> different occasions | في مناسبات مختلفة |
| <u>on</u> the menu | في القائمة | <u>in</u> general | عاما |
| <u>keep out</u> of the way | يبتعد عن الطريق | | |

1) when I met my boss Iconfused.

a-am

b-made

c-got

2) -when she was watching the match ,she.....asleep.

a-feel

b-fall

c-fell

3) -Heabroad to meet the delegation.

a-came

b-went

c-become

4) -Dr.Magdi yacouba lot of differences to people's lives.

a-made

b-did

c-came

5) -can younasi goring.

a-do

b-have

c-make

6) -Waiters in this restaurant.....food well.

a-save

b-safe

c-serve

7) -My students alwaysrespect to me everywhere.

a-do

b-show

c-make

8) -My dada lot of kinds of food on his farm.

a-grows

b-goes

c-does

9) -when will the partyplace.

a-have

b-takes

c-take

10) -I don't like meatall.

a-of

b-in

c-at

11) -.....general, he is cooperative.

a-of

b-in

c-on

12) -I can't choose any foodthis menu.

a-on

b-of

c-by

13) -he was..... worried when his sister didn't come.

a-abet

b-bit

c-a bit

Reading

Tamales

It is a Mexican dish of seasoned meat wrapped in cornmeal dough and steamed or baked in corn husks. It can also be made from meat, cheese and vegetables that are cooked inside banana leaves.

هو طبق مكسيكي من اللحم المتبل الملفوف في رقائق نشا الذرة ويطهى علي البخار او في قشور الذرة كما يمكن صنعه من اللحوم والجبن والخضراوات المطهيه داخل اوراق الموز.

Scottish Herring

A herring is a silvery fish that is most abundant in coastal waters and is of great commercial importance as a food in many parts of the world. In Scotland, they put the fish in a jar with water, onions and sugar for at least five days before it is served.

الرنجه هي سمكه فضيه تتواجد بكثره في المياه الساحليه ولها اهميه تجاريه كبيره كغذاء في اجزاء كثيره من العالم. في اسكتلندا، ويتم وضع الرنجه في برطمان به ماء وبصل وسكر لمدته خمس ايام علي الاقل قبل تقديمه.

Spring rolls

It is a Chinese snack consisting of rice paper filled with minced vegetables and usually meat, rolled into a cylinder and fried.

انها وجبه صينييه خفيفه تتكون من رقائق ارز محشو بالخضار المفرومه واللحوم عاده ملفوفه في اسطوانه وتقلي.

Reading text:

An Old-Fashioned Thanksgiving

In September 1620, a ship called the Mayflower arrived in North America with 102 passengers. Many died, but some were able to grow food and survive with help from Native Americans.

Thanksgiving is a day when families get together to remember these events. It is celebrated in the U S A every year on the fourth Thursday in November.

In 1882, Louisa M. Alcott wrote a short story called An old-fashioned Thanksgiving. Here is an extract.

When they woke, there was still a large amount of snow outside. Tilly made a good breakfast for the seven children.

"Now, about dinner," she said as they all finished eating. "Ma said that we could have whatever we liked, but she didn't expect us to have a traditional thanksgiving dinner."

Have you ever cooked a turkey? Asked Roxy ma said I should decide what to do, replied Tilly. All you children have to do is keep out of the way, and let Prue and me work."

The younger children walked out of the kitchen and into another room. As Tilly and Prue started to prepare the big meal. They got out all the spoons, dishes, pots and pans that they could find.

"Now, sister, we all have dinner at five," said Tilly, Pa will be here by that time and he'll be surprised to find us ready to serve the food. There's such a lot to do and I'm a bit worried about the turkey. It's so big"

"I know." Said Prue. "I fed it all summer and now it will feed me." she laughed.

New Year Celebrations around the World

As one year **changes** to the next, many **countries** around the world choose to **celebrate** the start of the New Year with **special** food. However, different things to enjoy the occasion.

In Mexico, for example, many people eat out at the many **restaurants around** the country on New Year's Day. The most **popular dish** is always **tamales**, which is **made** from **meat**, **cheese** and **vegetables** that are **cooked inside** banana **leaves**.

However, when the New Year **arrives** in Japan, people make **special** little cakes from **sweet** rice. Then they **get together** with their family and friends to eat them and **celebrate**.

In Spain, it is **traditional** to eat twelve **grapes** to welcome the New Year. The Spanish people eat this **particular amount** of grapes late at night, when the clock reaches midnight or twelve o'clock and they have one grape for each hour of the clock.

In Poland, people start to prepare a fish called herring at least five days before they eat it. They put the fish in a jar with water, onions and sugar and then they wait for the big day.

Finally, in **Greenland**, it is traditional for the men to serve a special meal of whale for women to enjoy. It takes months for the meat to become **ready** to eat and p say the **smell** is very **strong**.

Showing respect while having meals

1-. **Personally**, I think it's important to **respect** our older **relatives**. When South **Korean families** eat together, the oldest person at the table always starts to eat first. The rest of the family waits until this person has finished eating before they finish their meals. It is believed that this shows your **respect for** the most important people in your family.

2-. As you probably know, people in China usually use **chopsticks** to eat their food. However, you need to be **careful about** what you do with them when you're eating there. It is **considered** very **rude** to put your **chopsticks vertically** into your **bowl** of food. For example, **I** understand that this is a Chinese **tradition**, but for me, foreigners who do this don't mean to be **rude** at all.

3-. In my opinion, **lunchtime** isn't the best time **of** day for eating a large meal. However, in Russia it is thought that people should eat their **largest** meal of the day between 1 o'clock and 3 o'clock in the afternoon. In the evening, people usually eat some **light** food, such as **bread** and cold meat followed by **tea**. This is a **traditional way** of eating in Russia.

Writing a professional questionnaire

When you write a **questionnaire**, the type of questions you use is important. The **questions** should use simple language and shouldn't be **difficult** to understand. You

don't need to repeat the question. Don't give too many options as this will confuse people. And never ask **personal** questions. People **generally** won't to answer these. Ask one thing **at** a time. **Make sure** you don't have two questions in one. For example, "Do you go abroad often with your friends" And don't ask about things which happened a long time in the past. It can be difficult for people to remember. When you are ready, **decide on** the best time to ask your questions. before people start to **forget**!

What do people eat for breakfast in your country?

Adam: As your probably know, people eat very different things **for** breakfast around the world.

Shady: Yes, they do. In my opinion, breakfast is the **best meal of** the day. What do people eat in other countries?

Adam: Let's start the UK. It is thought that the British have the most **unhealthy traditional breakfast**. They have **fried eggs, beans, toast and fried meat**.

Shady: **Personally**, I wouldn't want to eat such a big meal in the morning. What about the French?

Adam: I understand that? The French have a much **smaller breakfast**: just a **croissant** or **piece of bread**.

Shady: That **sounds** nice, but for me, I'm happy with my **usual breakfast** of **bread, cheese and an egg**! One piece of **bread** would be too little.

Listening Text

A Thanksgiving invitation

Amy: So did you ask **parents** about visiting our home for **Thanksgiving**. Huda?

Huda: Yes, They like me to **try new** things and they thought it would be a great idea. My mum was very **curious about** the food you eat.

Amy: You'll love the food at Thanksgiving. Huda. Have you had **turkey** before? It's a lot like **chicken** but it's very big.

Huda: Well, I like chicken, so that should be **okay**. What **else** do you have?

Amy: We have a special kind of bread, called **cornbread**. It's **delicious**. And we have **sweet potatoes**. They're like normal **potatoes**, but much **nicer**.

Huda: That sounds great. What do you have for **dessert**?

Amy: Mu mum makes the most wonderful **pumpkin pie**. It's very **sweet** and heavy. Sometimes I fall **asleep** after I eat it, so I'll try not to eat too much.

Huda: Now. I'm feeling hungry.

Amy: Me too. But the best thing about thanksgiving is that we all have to help with the cooking. It's a great time to **meet** and **catch up with** friends and family. That's why we're all really looking forward to **seeing** you.

Huda: Great. I can't wait!

Meals from around the world

Nasi goreng

Nasi goreng is a meal with rice from Indonesia. In fact, the words “**Nasi goreng**” mean fried rice in Indonesia. Many people believe that Nasi goreng is one of spiciest meals in Indonesia, but for most people it's simply the best meal you can eat. Nasi goreng is made by frying rice and adding vegetables and either chicken or prawns to the pan. It's a bit saltier than some other Indonesian meals and it often comes with a fried egg on top. Nasi goreng is usually cheaper than most other meals in Indonesia. You can get it either in restaurant or from people who cook food on the side of the road.

Oysters

Oysters are a type of shellfish that people dig out of the earth under the sea. They're rarer than most other types of seafood and you can only eat them for seven months of the year. During these months. Thousands of oysters are eaten in France because many people believe they're one of the most special food you can eat. This means that oysters are usually one of the most expensive meals on the menu in French restaurants.

Mochi

Mochi are sweet, round rice cakes which are smaller than most of the cakes people eat. They look like little balls and they're made in many different colours. In Japan, where they come from, mochi are the most popular type of cake and the Japanese eat large amounts of them. Mochi were first made about one thousand year ago and people thought that they brought good luck. Today, different colours and types of mochi are more popular than others on different special occasions, for example, when the Japanese celebrate New Year's Day, flat, white mochi is the most popular type of mochi to eat.

Food in the UK

the UK did not used to be known for its good food, but it has got a lot better in recent years. Probably the most popular dish is fish and chips. The fish and potatoes are fried and they usually very salty. Fish and chips is usually cheaper than most other takeaway food, too. The British also like spicy food Indian. Food is usually the spiciest and Indian restaurants are very popular.

one of the most traditional dishes in the UK is most lamb. What people often eat for Sunday lunch with potatoes and vegetables. The British also like a lot of sweet things such as ice cream. In 2018, the British ate more than 320,000 ice cream. They mostly eat ice cream in the summer when the weather is hotter.

Tips on Writing a questionnaire

when you're writing a questionnaire, you need to ask the right questions. Some

questions are a lot more useful than others. And, very often small changes to a questionnaire can make a lot of difference.

Firstly, it's important that the questions are easy to understand, so it's always helpful to use simple language. If you use complicated language, people will need to read or hear the questions two or three times.

Secondly, it's important to use words with clear meanings. Words like "most" and "many" different things to different people. So, use words that are easier to understand, such as "almost all" and "almost none instead."

Thirdly, don't have too many options. People get confused when there are more than six options to choose from.

Exercises on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer

1. is a quantity of something
a- Amount b- A mount c- mount d- mounted
2. To do something fun to show that an event is special is to
a-certify b- collaborate c- celebrate d- corticated
3. To.....is to have a meal outside the home
a-eat up b-eat out c- eat away c- eat in
4. To meet people and spend time with them is to
a- Get together b- get in c- get up d- get away
5. is a time when something special happens.
a- An Occasion b- A chance c-An opportunity d- A coincidence
6. Tois to get something ready to eat or use.
a-Prepare b- precede c- preprend d- present
7. To Give people food and drink is to
a- Serf b- surf c- Serve d- serpent
8.means old ways of doing things that don't change.
a- untraditional b- traditional c- tragedy d- traditions
9. she was at the limit of her patience.
a-The right b- a right c- on the right of d- rightly
10. Everyone the right to say no or yes.
a- have b- has c- is d- are
11. Kareem is careful his reputation.
a- in b- of c- at d- on
12. As a teacher he was highly for his industry and patience.
a- respected b- respectful c- respectable d- respect
13. Ali's loyalty to his friends had made him lies.
a- say b- mention c- tell d- make
14. he liesher about his work and age.
a- On b- to c- for d- by
15. His solicitor was sent by the security guards.
a- in b- on c- about d- away
16. she has written for the....., television, and film.
a- siege b- sag c- stage d- movie

17. She likes to involve herself in every of the film-making process.
a-stage **b- time** **c- branch** **d- way**
18. There are plenty of options for vegetarians our menu.
a- in **b- onto** **c- by** **d- on**
19. the crew were busily ready for the departure.
a- Doing **b- setting** **c- making** **d- having**
20. She wasn't worried the fact that her daughter might be affected the future because her parents were divorced.
a- On **b- in** **b- by** **d- about**
21. Visitors will be able some of the articles on display.
a-of buying **b- to buy** **c- buy** **d- for buying**
22., I think it is important to make a study plan.
A-Personal **b- personnel** **c- In person** **d- personality**
23. Policy-makers should listen to popular opinion before making decisions .
a- popularity **b- publicity** **c- popular** **d- popularized**
24. Her favourite is roast chicken.
a- Plate **b- dish** **c- dash** **c- course**
25. They aim to become slimmer by following a
a- meal **b- dietitian** **c- diet** **d- regime**
26. I've lost the money - I'm in the
a- Soap **b- soup** **c- sob** **d- scoop**
27. In the afternoon, one guest said, the bride was and brought to the party.
a- coming **b- going** **c- getting** **d- fetched**
28. This woman is exceptional, she's, she's extraordinary and I have great respect for her.
a-private **b- especially** **c- special** **d- specialist**
29. He is strongly associated with Cambridge, but his city is London.
a-National **b- local** **c- nationality** **d- native**
30. There they fell asleep and slept peacefully, as lovers did when they were together.
a- Filled **b- fell** **c- dropped** **d- flew**
32. She began her own business with the she got from her grandfather.
a-Heritage **b- heiress** **c- heredity** **d- inheritance**
33. There was no denying that dog is to his master
a- loyalty **b- disloyal** **c- liability** **d-loyal**
34. Please, use the emergency in case of fire.
a-outlet **b- excite** **c- exit** **d- exited**
35. Mr. Ahmed Attia did not buy his house. It wasfrom his parents.
a- heritage **b- heredity** **c- an inheritance** **d- heir**
36. My younger brother always tells the.....He never lies.
a-Truth **b- true** **c- real** **d- reality**
37. It is natural to feel.....sometimes, but it is important to learn to control it.
a- huger **b- hungry** **c- anger** **d- banger**
38. We really wanted to climb the mountain, and we all felt very happy when we.....
a- Fail **b- fell** **c- filled** **d- succeeded**
39. The man in the market says that all his watches are new, but I don't.....him. I think they are all quite old.
a- see **b- rustle** **c- trust** **d- trustee**

40. Do you think that.....is the most important quality that a best friend can show you?

a-loyal b- disloyal c- disloyalty d- loyalty

41. My grandmother had a small.....as a cleaner, but she never had very much money.

a- outcome b-come in c- overcome d- income

42. This email asking for money says it is from the bank, but I think it is trying to.....us.

a-take up b- deceive c- deceit d- decent

43. You can go into the building one way and..... through a different door.

a-exist b- exegete c- exaggerate d- exit

Translate into Arabic:

1-We should increase the cultivated land area in Egypt and grow more crops. Food shortage is a problem that is facing many countries now. That's why we must make a plan to avoid famines.

.....

2-Most young people today are substandard in culture and knowledge. TV took us away from reading and attending lectures and symposia. Our educational system doesn't develop the creative and intellectual faculties.

.....

Translate into English:

(1) ان مصر الان في حاجه ماسه لمزيد من الجهود والتعاون والتضحيه لاستعادة مكانتها في المنطقه

.....

(2) العلم والمعرفه هما اساس تقدم اي دوله

.....

Adjective الصفه

الصفه هي كلمه تصف الاسم سواء كان شخص او نبات او حيوان او شيء.

-اين نري الصفه؟

1-قبل الاسم:

-I met a polite girl.

-They are great projects.

2- بعد To be:

-Rana is intelligent.

-The building was huge.

Smell, taste, feel, look, seem

3- بعد افعال الحواس

- -That doesn't seem nice.
- -He looks sad today.
- -I feel happy today.
- -This food tastes delicious.
- -Really the soup smells nice.

4-بعد افعال أخرى

Become- turn- go- grow- get- fall

- 1) -During the match he fell asleep.
- 2) -His face become angry yesterday.
- 3) -The dog went mad.
- 4) -It turned windy yesterday.

😊 ملحوظة خفيفه للطلبه الظريفه:

1- هناك بعض الاسماء لا تقبل الصفه قبلها ولكن الصفه بعدها وهي الكلمات التي تحتوي علي :

Some – any – every – no

- I search for (**anyone tall** – tall anyone) here .
 -I want to rest (**somewhere quieter**- quiet somewhere).

2- هناك بعض الصفات لا تقبل اسم بعدها:

alive – alike – asleep- alone- afraid

- He is alive. صحيح -He is alive person. (x) لا يجوز ان نقول

3- كثيرا ما نجد صفات تنتهي بـ v-ing / ed

وهي صفات تصف الذي وقع عليه الحدث (ed)

وهي صفات تصف ما يسببه الحدث (v-ing)

| | | | |
|--------------|------|---------------|------|
| amazed | مدهش | amazing | مدهش |
| surprised | مدهش | surprising | مدهش |
| disappointed | محبط | disappointing | محبط |
| interested | مهتم | interesting | شيق |

Test yourself

-I met somein the street yesterday.

a-rude **b-rude boys** **c-boys rude**

2-His car was.....when I saw him.

a-A beautiful **b-beautifully** **c-beautiful**

3-During the match she.....asleep.

a-filled **b-fell** **c-failed**

4-When the light went out it went.....

a-dark **b-a dark** **c-darkness**

5-When she succeeded, she looked.....

a-happily **b-happy** **c-happiness**

6-Mohamed was.....when the other player kicked the ball.

a-amaze **b-amazing** **c-amazed**

7-Mohamed Salah was.....in his play in the last match.

8-The match was.....I really enjoyed my time.

a-excite **b-exciting** **c-excited**

Comparative adjectives

صفات المقارنه

-قبل ان نبدأ في صفات المقارنه لابد ان نقول ان الكلمه عباره عن مقاطع وعدد مقاطع الكلمه هو نفس عدد الاصوات المتحركه في الكلمه مثل:

-مقطع واحد:

Hot-short – thin- big- tall

-مقطعين:

Peaceful- dangerous- wonderful – cheerful

-عندما نقوم بالمقارنه بين طرفين:

Less than / er.....than اذا كانت الصفه مكونه من مقطع واحد نضع

Taller than - hotter than - bigger than

Less tall than - less hot than

-اذا كانت الصفه مكونه من اكثر من مقطع نضعها بين:

Morethan / less.....than

More expensive than

less expensive than

More beautiful than

less beautiful than

- 1) -Mona is (tall- **taller**) than Rasha.
- 2) -Alaa is shorter (then – **than**) Israa.
- 3) Ali is (fat- fater- **fatter**) than me.

Superlative adjectives

-عند تفضيل شخص او شيء عن بقية اشياء:

-اذا كانت الصفه ذات مقطع واحد:

The الصفه **est** **the least +** الصفه

The tallest

the least tall

The fattest

the least fat

-اذا كانت الصفه مكونه من اكثر من مقطع:

The most + الصفه **the least +** الصفه

The most expensive

the least expensive

The most beautiful

the least beautiful

1. -Ramy is the (taller- **tallest**) boy in the class.

2. -Soha is (the – a – an) most beautiful girl in the class.
3. -Seham is the (more- most) intelligent girl in the class.
4. -Seif is the (more- least) tall in the class.

As as

وتستخدم هذه التركيبه عند تساوي الصفات ونضع بينها الصفه بدون اضافته:

| | |
|-----------------|---------------------|
| as tall as | the same height |
| as old as | the same age |
| as fast as | the same speed |
| as heavy as | the same weight |
| as beautiful as | the same beauty |
| as long as | the same length |
| as deep as | the same depth |
| as high as | the same height |
| as popular as | the same popularity |
| as wide as | the same width |
| as expensive as | the same price |

ونفي هذه الصيغه:

not as الصفه **as**
not so الصفه **as**

- 1) -Ramy is as tall (as- so) Ali.
- 2) -Mona is (so – as) careful as her sister.
- 3) -Walaa is as (short- shorter) as her mother.

صفات شاذه

| adjective | comparative | superlative |
|----------------------|------------------------------------|--|
| good | better than | the best |
| well | better than | the best |
| bad | worse than | the worst |
| little | less than | the least |
| many/ much /a lot of | more than | the most |
| little | less than | the least |
| far | farther than /further than | the farthest /the furthest |
| late | later than اكثر تاخرا الثاني | the latest اكثر تاخرا the last الاخير |

- 1) -Asmaa is the (better – best) girl in the class.
- 2) -Ali is (worse- bad) than his friend.
- 3) -Rania has books (many- more) than me.
- 4) -Rokia is (good- better) than Seham.

😊 ملاحظات خفيفه للطلبة الظريفه:

1- يمكن حذف Than في صفات المقارنه:

-Today is hot but yesterday was (hotter- hotter than)

-Mona is good but Sara is (better- better than)

2- من الممكن ان تقول ان فلان اكثر من فلان بقليل او بكثير.
فكيف نقول بقليل او بكثير : اننا نضع احدي الكلمات الاتيه:

a lot / much +er / more + صفه بكثير
a little/ a bit/ slightly +er / more + صفه بقليل

- 1) -Mona is much taller than Heba. اي ان مني اطول من هبه بكثير.
2) -Mona is a little taller than Heba. اي ان مني اطول من هبه بقليل.

- 1) -Rania is a little (tall- taller) than Samia.
2) -Marwa is (much more – more much) careful than Heba.
3) -Arwa is (a little – less) shorter than her mother.

The morethe more

كلماكلما

| | | | |
|----------------------|------------|--------------------|------------|
| -the more + | فعل + فاعل | , the more | فعل + فاعل |
| -the less + | فعل + فاعل | , the less | فعل + فاعل |
| -the.....er + | فعل + فاعل | , the ...er | فعل + فاعل |

اي شيء من الطرف الاول مع اي شيء من الطرف الثاني:

1. -The more you eat , the fatter you become.
2. -The less you study, the lower marks you get.
3. -The thinner you are, the weaker you become.

3- عندما نريد ان نعبر عن تغيير لا نريد استخدام Than

1. -He is feeling happier now. اي اكثر سعادته من ذي قبل؟
2. -I need a bigger size. -اريد مقاس اكبر.
3. -Things have become more and more expensive. -الاشياء اصبحت اغلي واغلي.
4. -You become better and better with practice. -تصبح افضل وافضل مع الممارسه.

as _____ as

To be / have **as** الصفه **as**
Get - become **as** الصفه **as**
اي فعل اخر **As** حال **as**

-Mona is as bad as Heba.
-Rania writes as badly as Soha.

- He has become as good as his friend.
- He plays as well as his friend.

لاحظ بعد صيغه المقارنه او المساواه:

- -He is taller than **I'm**.
- -He is taller than **me**.

The _____ صيغه المقارنه of the two

- -He is the taller of the two brothers.
- -He is the tallest of the three brothers.

-ركز في السؤال:

- -Who is stranger: Ahmed or Ali?

Superlative adjectives

-يتم حذف The اذا سبقت بفعل حب او كراهيه او صفه ملكيه

- -I like my father (**most** – the most).
- -Romeo and Juliet is Shakespeare's (**best** – the best) play.
- -I like Charles Dickens especially his (**best** – the best) novel Hard times.

The nearest to الاقرب الي the farthest from الابد من

- Aswan is the farthest city (of – **from**) Cairo.
- Banha is the nearest city (**to** – from) Cairo.

In / at Of

مع الاماكن او الاسم المفرد العائد علي شئ
مع الفترات الزمنية والاشخاص

- -Rana is the tallest girl in the family.
- -Merna is the tallest girl in the school.
- -Heba is the tallest girl of her sisters.

مقارنه never ever تفضيل

- -I have (ever- **never**) seen a better one than Mohamed.
- -Asmaa is the most beautiful girl I have (never- **ever**) seen.

-هناك بعض الصفات التي يجوز معاملتها معامله مقطع واحد او اثنين اي تأخذ:

most/ more ولكن الافضل **est/ most** او **more / er**
quiet - polite - rude - simple - modern- friendly

- My house is more **modern** than years.
- My house is **moderner** than yours.

مقارنه الاسماء

| | | | |
|----------------------|------------------|------------------|---------|
| • -more | اسم يعد \ لا يعد | than | اكثر من |
| • -fewer | اسم يعد | than | اقل من |
| • -less | اسم لا يعد | than | اقل من |
| • -the most | + | اسم يعد \ لا يعد | الاكثر |
| • -the fewest | + | اسم يعد | الاقل |
| • -the least | + | اسم لا يعد | الاقل |

- -Rabab has more friends than Amany.
- -Rania has more money than Amany.
- -Rania has fewer books than me.
- -Rasha has less information than me.
- -He the fewest mistakes in exercise.
- -He did the least work in the class.

Exercises on Grammar

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d

- This is the test I've ever taken.
a- hard b- harder c- less hard d- hardest
- It was wrong him to neglect his study.
a-with b- for c- of d- to
- He was not as his colleagues.
a- less cooperative b- as cooperative c- more cooperative d- cooperative
- He is notreliable as his friend.
a-so b- more c- less d- lessen
- My flat is..... than yours.
a- more big b- less big c- the biggest d- bigger
- You didn't do aswork as I did.
a-more b- less c- least d- much
- Her friend is than her.
a- as wealthy b- wealthiest c- wealthier d- wealthy
- My car issmall than yours.
a-less b- more c- least d- most
- Nobody in our company is Peter.
a- as efficient b- as efficient as c- most efficient than d- efficient
- It was..... of her to waste all her money.
a-more foolish than b- less foolish c- least foolish d- foolish
- Laptops are becoming popular nowadays.
a-less and more b- more and less c- much and more d- more and more
- She was astonishedsome of her old friends at the party.
a- seeing b- to see c- of seeing d- seen
- You shouldn't have invited John to the party. He's a man.

- a- bored b- bores c- boring d- to bore**
- 14- Mike has muchmoney than me.
- a- many b- most c- the least d- more**
- 15-people are entering the competition this year than last year.
- a-A few b- A few more c- Much more d- less**
- 16- Thefat you eat, the healthier you become.
- a-less b- least c- most d- much**
- 17- The white flower is pretty, but I think the red one is even
- a- most pretty b- prettiest c- prettier d- pretty**
- 18- I don't read asbooks as you do.
- a-much b- more c- most d- many**
- 19- Samah is thestudent in our class.
- a-intelligent b- more intelligent c- less intelligent d- most intelligent**
- 20- London is beautiful than Amsterdam.
- a-more b- as c- much d- so**
- 21- The Red Sea is notbig as the Mediterranean.
- a-so b- much c- less d- more**
- 22- Climbing isdangerous sport in the world.
- a-the more b- the less c- the most d- most**
- 23- The patient isbetter today.
- a-lightly b- lastly c- slightly d- brightly**
- 24- The Nile isriver in the world.
- a-the longest b- as long as c- more long d- a longer**
- 25- That's the book I've ever read. I liked it so much.
- a-best b- much c- least interesting d- most**
- 26- The Indian Ocean isas the Pacific ocean.
- a-more deep b- not so deep c- so deep d- deeper**
- 27- Yesterday I was sick. Today I feel.....
- a-more better b-better c-good d- as good**
- 28- John is than he was yesterday.
- a-more sick b-sickest c-sicker d- much sick**
- 29- The boys are today than they were yesterday.
- a- happier b-more happy c- much happy d- happy**
- 30- My sister is two years than me.
- a. the youngest b-so young c- younger d- young**
- 31- Do you know what animal in the world is?
- a. the slowest b-slow as c-slower d- slow**
- 32- I think spring is season of the year.
- a- the most beautiful b-very beautiful c-more beautiful d- beautiful**
- 33- Maths is to me than biology.
- a- the most important b- so important c- more important d- important**
- 34- Helen is ballet dancer in our city.
- a-good b- good as c-better d- the best**
- 35- That test was than the previous one last week.
- a- the most difficult b- so difficult c-more difficult d- difficult**
- 36- Tom has got message from his parents.

- 37- English is for me than Chinese.
a- the longest b-long as c-longer d- long
- 38- My phone is than my sister's phone.
a- the easiest b-very easy c-easier d- easy
- 39- Last winter was winter in our country.
a- the most expensive b-so expensive c-more expensive d- expensive
- 40- Ali's mobile is than mine.
a- the coldest b- cold as c- colder d- cold
- 41- This car is car produced by this company.
a- the most beautiful b-very beautiful c- more beautiful d- beautiful
- 42- What continent is America or Africa?
a- the newest b-so new c-newer d- new
- 43- Do you know who woman in the world is?
a. the largest b- very large c-larger d- large
- 44- Mary is than Ben in my class.
a-fast b- so fast c-faster d- the fastest
- 45- Who is runner : Tom or Sam?
a-clever b- clever as c- cleverer d- the cleverest
- 46- This information is for me than the previous one.
a-bad b-very bad c-worse d-the worst
- 47- When was summer in your country?
a- the most useful b- useful as c-more useful d- useful
- 48- When was summer in your country?
a- the hottest b-very hot c-hotter d- hot

1- Choose the correct answer:

1. Which is the.....boys' name in your class?
a) popular b) biggest c) most popular d) population
2. This book was.....than the last one she wrote. I didn't like it.
a) bad b) best c) worst d) worse
3. Let's.....together this weekend. It would be nice to see you!
a) have b) get c) make d) do
4. My mother has.....a delicious meal of chicken and rice.
a) prepared b) celebrated c) done d) made
5. Do you prefer sweet food like chocolate or.....food such as fish and nuts?
a) salt b) salty c) spicy d) small
6. Did you know that Indian food is one of the.....foods in the UK?
a) most popular b) poor c) best popular d) popular
7. He isof the couple .
a-tall b-taller c- tallest d- the tallest
8. He writes English better than
a- I b- me c- me do d- mine
9. Manal has money than her friend .
a- fewer b- much c- much more d- little
10. Gamal is as tall as Omar. They are of the same
a- tall b- highness c- height d- weight
11. This woman is exceptional, she's, she's extraordinary and I have great respect for her.

- a-private b- especially c- special d- specialist**
12. He liesher about his work and age.
a- On b- to c- for d- by
13. To.....is to have a meal outside the home
a-eat up b-eat out c- eat away d- eat in
14. He is an idiot, he spends money like
a- air b- water c- oil d- noting
15. She was inwhen she found out that she had been robbed of all her money.
a- soap b- slippery c- mud d- soup
16. He left for home when he finishedall his work.
a- to do b- do c- doing d- to doing

1- Money can be used for building new Industrial plants, improving health care and solving the problems of housing and transport.

- (a) يمكن استخدام الأموال لتكوين نباتات صناعية وتحسين الرعاية الصحية وحل مشاكل الإسكان والنقل .
 (b) يمكن استخدام الأموال لبناء مصانع جديدة وتحسين الرعاية الصحية وحل مشاكل الإسكان والنقل .
 (c) يمكن استخدام الأموال لبناء نباتات صناعية وتحسين الرعاية الصحية وحل مشاكل المنازل والنقل .
 (d) يمكن أن يستخدم المال لبناء مصانع جديدة وتحسين العناية الصحية وحل مشاكل المنازل والسفر .

2-If children have good manners, they should keep quiet while grown-ups are talking.

- (a) إذا كان الأطفال يتمتعون بالأخلاق الحميدة، يجب عليهم التزام الصمت أثناء حديث الكبار .
 (b) لو يمتلك الأطفال طرقاً جيدة، يجب عليهم التزام الهدوء عندما يكبرون ويتحدثون .
 (c) لو يمتلك الصغار عادات اجتماعية، يجب عليهم الهدوء عند الكبر والحديث مع الكبار .
 (d) لو يتمتع الأطفال بالأخلاق الحميدة، يجب عليهم الهدوء ليحترمهم الكبار أثناء الحديث .

4-We are in bad need of cooperation especially these days.

- (a) نحن في حاجة ماسة إلى التعاون خاصة هذه الأيام .
 (b) لقد فقدنا التعاون كثيراً خاصة هذه الأيام .
 (c) التعاون بيننا سيئ جداً خاصة هذه الأيام .
 (d) نحن في احتياج سيئ إلى التعاون خاصة هذه الأيام .

Unit 3

The future of food

| | | | | | |
|------------------|-------------------------|-----------------------|-----------------|--------------------------|------------------------|
| agriculture | الزراعة | production(n) | عملية الإنتاج | almost(adv) | تقريبا |
| algae | الطحلب | seaweed . (n) | عشب البحر | an introduction (n) | مقدمة |
| crop(n) | محصول | source(n) | مصدر | boring(adj) | ممل |
| earth(n) | الأرض | sustainable(adj) | مستدام | brainstorm | عصف ذهني |
| innovation(n) | ابتكار | variety(n) | تنوع | chemicals(n) | كيماويات |
| livestock(n) | الماشية/الأنعام | explain(v)\-ed | يشرح | climate(n) | المناخ |
| conclusion(n) | خاتمة | organization(n) | منظمة | finally(adv) | أخيرا |
| continent(n) | قارة | producing(n) | انتاج | growing(n) | نمو/زيادة |
| create(v)d | يخلق/ينشأ/يصنع | protect(v)\ed | يحمي | improve(v)\d | يحسن |
| crops(n) | محاصيل | protection(n) | حماية | increase(v)\d | يزداد |
| damage(v)(n) | ضرر | rainforests | غابات ممطرة | involve(v)\d | يشمل |
| decade(n) | عقد (10 سنوات) | real(adj) | حقيقي | mention(v) | يذكر |
| description(| وصف | remove(v)\d | يزيل | extraordinary | غير عادي |
| destroy(v) | يدمر | researcher | باحث | flat roofs(n) | اسطح مستوية |
| destroying(n) | تدمير | scientist(n) | عالم | fresh(adj) | طازج/نقي |
| difference(n) | الفرق | seriously(adv) | بجدية | green space(n) | مساحة خضراء |
| efficiently | بكفاءة | solution(n) | حل | hydroponics | الزراعة المائية |
| electricity(n) | الكهرباء | solve(v) | يحل | local(adj) | محلي |
| environment | البيئة | space(n) | مساحة/فراغ/فضاء | nearly(adv) | تقريبا |
| evidence(n) | دليل | summary(n) | ملخص | protect(v)\-ed | يحمي |
| expect(v)\ed | يتوقع | technology(n) | تكنولوجيا | surprisingly | بشكل مفاجئ |
| factual(adj) | واقعي/حقيقي | the United Nations UN | الامم المتحدة | the Amazon rainforest(n) | غابات الامازون الممطرة |
| farming(n) | الزراعة | weather(n) | الطقس | the government(n) | الحكومة |
| farmland(n) | مراعي | include(v)\d | يتضمن | tourists(n) | السياح |
| feed(v) | يطعم | produce(v)\-d | ينتج | urban farming(n) | الزراعة في المدن |
| Antarctica | القارة القطبية الجنوبية | offer(n) | يعرض/عرض | protect(v)\-ed | يحمي |
| argue(v)\d | يجادل/يناقد | persuade(v)\-d | يقنع | population | كثافة سكانية |
| capital city(n) | العاصمة الرئيسية | phrase(n) | عبارة | problem(n) | مشكلة |
| desert(n) | الصحراء | plan(v)\-ed | يخطط | encourage(v)\-d | يشجع |
| electric cars(n) | سيارات كهربائية | planning(n) | تخطيط | essay(n) | مقال |

Definitions

| | | |
|-------------|---------|---|
| agriculture | الزراعة | the practice or science of farming. |
| algae | الطحلب | a very simple plant without stems or leaves that grows in or near water. |
| crop | المحصول | a plant such as wheat , rice, or fruit that is grown by farmers and used as food. |
| earth | الأرض | the hard surface of the world ,as opposed to the sea or |

| | | |
|----------------------|-------------------|---|
| | | air. |
| Hydroponics | الزراعة بدون تربة | the way of growing plants without using any soil. |
| innovation | إبداع / ابتكار | a new idea ,method or introduction of new things or methods. |
| livestock | الماشية | animals such as cows and sheep that are kept on a farm. |
| production | عملية الإنتاج | the process of making or growing things to be sold, especially in large quantities. |
| seaweed | عشب البحر | a plant that grows in the sea. |
| source | مصدر | a thing , a place, activity etc. that you get something from |
| sustainable | مستدام | able to continue without causing damage to the environment. |
| urban farming | الزراعة في المدن | is growing food in our cities. |
| variety | تنوع | the differences within a group, set of actions etc that make it interesting. |

Don't forget

| | | | |
|---------------------------|--------------------|---------------------------|---------------------------|
| a link to | رابط / اتصال ب | keeping livestock | تربية الماشية |
| a summer job | وظيفة صيفية | learning about | التعلم عن |
| a talking head | متحدث في التلفزيون | living on the earth | الحياة على كوكب الأرض |
| according to | وفقا ل / طبقا ل | meat production | إنتاج اللحم |
| an expert on | خبير في | neither of | لا هذا ولا ذاك |
| as a result | نتيجة ل | possible solution to | حق محتمل ل |
| be likely to | من المحتمل | predict to+inf | يتنبأ ب |
| cause damage | يسبب دمارا تلف | save energy | توفير الطاقة |
| climate change | تغير المناخ | sea level | سطح البحر |
| cut down | يقطع شجرة | sources of food | مصادر الطعام |
| do an exam | يؤدي امتحان | special about | خاص ب |
| due to+(n.\v+ing) | بسبب | sustainable solutions | حلول مستدامة |
| electric vehicles | مركبات الكهرونية | technological solutions | حلول تكنولوجية |
| find out | يكشف | tell the difference | يخبر الفرق |
| focus on | يركز على | the flow of water | تدفق الماء |
| food production | إنتاج الطعام | the future of farming | مستقبل الزراعة |
| give an opinion | يبدى رأيه | the local people | الناس المحليين |
| have an effect on | لديه تأثير على | the reason for | سبب ل |
| hope for | يأمل في | using chemicals | استخدام المواد الكيميائية |
| how would you feel+v-ing? | كيف تشعر نحو | variety in the sources of | التنوع في المصادر |

| | | | |
|----------------------|-------------|-------------------|----------------|
| I can't imagine that | لا اتخيل أن | wet places | اماكن ممطرة |
| in the case of | في حالة ان | work on | يعمل على مشروع |
| instead of | بدلا من | working on a farm | يعمل في مزرعة |

Synonyms

| | | |
|---------------|-----------|-----------------|
| negative | سلبي | bad\passive |
| urban | حضري | civil |
| boring | ممل | dull |
| factual | حقيقي | real |
| sustainable | مستديم | continuous |
| fresh | طازج | good |
| extraordinary | غير عادي | amazing |
| cheap | رخيص | inexpensive |
| variety | تنوع | diversity |
| variety | نوع | sort |
| sustain | يصون | maintain |
| summary | تلخيص | outline |
| run | يدير | operate \manage |
| productive | خصب | rich\fertile |
| original | أصلي | native |
| keep | يربي | raise |
| involve | يشتمل على | include |
| innovative | مبتكر | original |

Antonyms

| | | | |
|-------------|--------|---------------|------------|
| sustainable | مستدام | unsustainable | غير مستدام |
| productive | منتج | unproductive | غير مجدى |
| include | يتضمن | exclude | يستبعد |
| keep | يحافظ | lose | يفقد |
| original | أصلي | fake | مزيف |
| negative | سلبي | positive | ايجابي |
| boring | ممل | interesting | شيق |
| fresh | طازج | stale | مصوف |
| expensive | غالي | cheap | رخيص |

Derivatives

Produce

| | | | |
|------------|--------------|------------|-------------|
| produce | ينتج | produce | انتاج زراعي |
| productive | كثير الانتاج | production | انتاج |
| producer | منتج | products | منتجات |

Sustain

| | | | |
|---------------|------------|----------------|-----------|
| sustain | يتحمل | sustainable | مستدام |
| unsustainable | غير مستدام | sustainability | الاستدامة |

Vary

| | | | |
|---------|------------|----------|-------|
| vary | يتحمل | variety | تنوع |
| various | غير مستدام | variable | متغير |

Agriculture

| | | | |
|--------------|-------------|-----------------|----------------|
| agriculture | علم الزراعة | agriculture | النشاط الزراعي |
| agricultural | زراعي | agriculturalist | خير زراعي |

Innovate

| | | | |
|------------|------------|------------|------------|
| innovate | يبتكر | innovation | ابتكار |
| innovative | مبتكر-جديد | innovatory | مبتكر-خلاق |

Don't get confused

| | | | |
|----------------|------------------------------------|------------------------|------------------------------------|
| farming | الزراعة الاهتمام بالحيوانات والارض | agriculture | النشاط الزراعي الاهتمام بالارض فقط |
| agriculture | علم الزراعة | agricultural | زراعي |
| hydroponics | علم الزراعة بدون تربة | agriculturalist | خبير في الزراعة |
| climate | مناخ "فترة طويلة" | weather | طقس فترة زمنية قصيرة أو مكان محدد |
| encourage+ inf | يشجع | discourage from+ v_ing | يحبط |

1-The.....suddenly changed and we arrived home cold and wet.

a-climatic

b-weather

c-climate

2-Most scientists accept thatchange is linked to carbon emissions.

a-climatic

b-weather

c-whether

3-We muststudents to study more.

a-encourage

b-discourage

c-courage

4-He has discouraged me.....completing my study.

a-of

b-from

c-by

5-.....is the practice or business of growing crops or keeping animals on a farm.

a-Hydroponics

b-agriculture

c-farming

6-.....is a way of growing plants usually crops without soil.

a-Hydroponics

b-Agriculture

c-Farming

Language Notes**instead - instead of**

instead

Instead of+ v_ing

بدلاً من ذلك وتأتي في بداية أو نهاية جملة رقم 2
بدلاً من

- -(Instead – **instead of**) Mona, he chose Noha in the team.
- -He didn't go to school (**instead**-instead of) he stayed at home.
- -He didn't go to school .He stayed at home (**instead**-instead of).

Hundred, thousands, million, billion

هذه الكلمات اذا جاء قبلها عدد محدد تكون مفرد اما اذا لم يسبقها عدد محدد وتشير الي كميات كبيره تكون جمعاً

- -I need five (thousands- **thousand**) pounds to start project.
- -(Million – **Millions**) of pounds spent on destructive weapons.
اعرف ان المبالغ الماليه المحدده تعامل المفرد
- -Three million pounds (**is** – are) not enough for this project.

North - northern

| | | |
|--------------|----------|-------|
| the north of | northern | شمالي |
| the south of | southern | جنوب |
| the east of | eastern | شرق |
| the west of | western | غرب |

1-He lives in..... Europe.

a-The southern b-south c-**southern**

2-the city is located in.....Canada.

a-The north b-**the north of** c- the northern

include - contain

- **-include** يتضمن .يحتوي ع (يأتي بعدها جزء من كل)
- **-contain** = involve يحتوي علي (يأتي بعدها كل الشئ)
- **-consist of** يتكون لا بد من وجود حرف الجر ويأتي بعدها المكونات الاساسيه
- **enclose** = **attach** يحيط **enclose** يرفق
- Including متضمنا \ من بينهم inclusion تضمن

- -there were 13 injured people in the accident (**including** – containing) 2 children.
- -the bottle (includes- **contains**) 3 letters of water.
- -The flat (contains- **consists**) of 3 rooms.
- -I have (contained – **enclosed**) the photo with the e-mail.

Floor \ ground \ soil \ land

Soil

Floor

Ground

Land

earth

تربه "خاصه بالزراعه ، تربه معنويه"

ارضيه "بلاط شقه ، حجره"

ارضيه ملعب او شارع

ارض يابس وليس ماء \ منطقه يملكها شخص ما

- تربه زراعيه-كوكب الارض -

- -Have you swept the (ground – **floor**)
- -Home are the (floor- **soil**) of reform or corruption.
- -the (ground – **earth**) goes round the sun.
- -the player fell on (**the ground**- the earth)

Because - because of

Because - as - since +

جمله كامله

لان

Because of - due to - owing to + v-ing

بسبب

-He didn't come (because- **because of**) his illness.

-He didn't come (**because**- because of) he was ill.

Expressions

| | | | |
|-------------------------------|-------------|----------------------------|--------------------|
| make money | يكون ثروه | keep livestock | يربي حيوانات مزارع |
| earn money | يكسب مال | introduce a problem | يعرض مشكله |
| offer a solution | يقدم حل | take ages | ياخذ وقتا طويلا |
| invest money | يستثمر مال | write a summary | يكتب تلخيص |
| tell the difference | يخبر الفرق | start fires | يشعل نيران |
| damage health | يدمر الصحة | grow crops | يزرع محاصيل |
| damage the environment | يدمر البيئه | get worse | يزداد سوءا |

Don't get confused

| | | | |
|------------------|--------------------|-----------------|-------------|
| purpose | غرض | proposal | عرض |
| seize the chance | ينتهاز الفرصه | miss the chance | يفوت الفرصه |
| follow | يتبع | flow | انسياب |
| grow up | يكبر للاشخاص | grow to | يزداد الي |
| production | انتاج صناعي/ زراعي | produce | انتاج زراعي |
| staff | هيئه عاملين | stuff | يحشو |
| earth | الارض | soil | ارض زراعيه |
| heal | يلتئم | heal up | يلتئم |

The future of farming

According to the United Nations, there will be almost 10 billion people in the world by 2050. As a result, we will have to increase our food production by about 70 percent. However, farmers do not have space to keep more livestock and grow more crops. Instead, they'll need to look for more sustainable solutions and this will involve producing a wider variety of food. How would you feel about eating a burger that was grown in a laboratory? Scientists think that it could be more sustainable than keeping livestock. Some of the people who have eaten those burgers say that they can't tell the difference between the new burgers and real meat.

Restaurants from the United Nations have found that some kinds of agriculture are seriously damaging the land. This is not sustainable. If farming continues to cause so much damage, there won't be enough land left for food production. In Europe, most of the damage is due to farmers using too many chemicals, so they will need to find new ways to help their crops grow. In southern Africa, the problem is that there is too much rain in the summer. In the future, we can

expect that farmers in southern Africa will be using innovations in technology to remove water from the land and use it elsewhere.

Is algae the future of food?

We will need to find sustainable sources of food in the future because there will be more people to feed and many places will be too hot and dry for agriculture. So, why don't we think about farms in the sea? Algae are plants that grow very quickly in water and wet places. They are eaten by everything from the smallest fish to giant whales. Some kinds of Algae are called seaweed, and this is a very popular food in China and Japan. Algae is very healthy and some scientists believe that a lot more people will be eating it in the future. They hope that farmers won't need to damage the environment, because they will be growing our food in the ocean. In fact, scientists think that growing algae will help to clean the sea and improve the air that we breathe. But will you want to eat it? Well, you might not even notice. Scientists are already using seaweed to replace salt in bread and more other foods to make it much healthier.

=====

This essay will focus on the future of agriculture. First, I will explain the reason why agriculture needs to change. After that we will look at several ways that agriculture could change. Finally, I will give my opinion on what farmers should do to prepare for the future.

The Earth's surface is heating up and soon there will be less land that farmers can use.

In the case of Africa, the continent could lose up to 18 percent of its farm land in the next fifty years. As a result, farmers will need to farm their land even more efficiently.

Due to the fact that there will be less land available for agriculture in the future, farmers will need to grow a greater variety of crops. Evidence suggests that keeping livestock will not be sustainable and we may start the production of new sources of food, like algae, instead.

In my view, farmers should see this is as a chance to try new things and to start using new technology, such as robots, on their farms, they should start doing this immediately so they're prepared for the future.

To conclude, agriculture is clearly going to change a lot over the next few decades.

The future of forests

The world has been losing millions of trees from the rainforests every year for a long time. Many trees get cut down so that we have wood to make furniture, and many more get cut down because people need the land to grow food. However, there may be hope for the future because countries around the world are changing the way we think about these important areas. Changes started a long time ago in Costa Rica. Around 60% of the rainforest in this small central American country was lost in the 1980s.

but in the **1990s**; the government started working with local farmers and **persuaded** them to **look** after the rainforest **instead of cutting** down more trees. This **encouraged** tourists **to visit** the country, and soon the local people started to make more money from tourism than from cutting down trees.

It was **a great success**, but things **got worse** in **other parts** of the world, such as the Amazon rainforest, until 2004. Then many people and governments around the world started to change how they thought about rainforests, and the number of trees **cut down** there **has** been getting smaller every year. Many parts of the Amazon rainforest are now protected and, like Costa Rica, it **is hoped** that more people will be **visiting** and **enjoying** this **extraordinary** place in the future. Finally, we can all hope that our children **will be learning** about the rainforests for many years **to come**.

Hydroponics

With the population of the world predicted to grow to around 10 billion by 2050, one problem we will have **is finding** enough land for food production. A possible solution to this problem is **using** something **called hydroponics**. Hydroponics is a **way** to **grow** plants in **special water** which contains all the food that plants need to grow. This is a big help for farmers living in areas with **poor soil**. Hydroponics uses a lots less space than traditional farming and, **surprisingly**, it also uses less water because any water that the plants do not use is reused, there are also fewer problems with insects. Almost any plant can grow using **hydroponics** and many plants produce more fruit and leaves this way. Some people argue that **hydroponics** is not very **good for** large farms because they need **expensive computers** to **control** the **flow** of water, light, etc. to the plants, but others **argue that** it could **offer** the best solution to future problems. Many scientists think that in the future, we **will be using** hydroponics to grow food even in places where nothing grows now, such as **desert, Antarctica** or even space.

=====

This essay will **focus on** something my uncle is planning to do to help food **production**: something called **urban farming**.

My uncle lives in London and first, I will explain what **urban farming** is and why he wants to do it with a group of his friends.

Urban farming is **growing** food in **our cities**. Of course, cities are not usually **good for farming** due to the fact that there is so little **green space**, but he says they will be using **flat roofs**, gardens and **open spaces** to grow what they can.

In the case of London, people **already grow** a lot of **flowers** in their **gardens**, but next year, the **group** of **friends will be planting** more fruit and vegetables in any open spaces they can use. At the end of the year, they will be **eating fresh** fruit and **vegetables** from **these spaces**.

In my view, **urban farming** is a great idea. It will help my uncle and his friends to **save money** in the shops, and it might also help them to **earn money**. They hope they will be selling some of the **produce** to local **restaurants** and markets.

To conclude, urban farming is an **interesting idea**. All the **evidence suggests** that it could help us **grow** our own food in the future, even in cities without much **outdoor space**.

Listening

The population problem in Egypt

The **population** of Egypt **is** growing by nearly two percent a year. That means that there are one million more people living in its cities every six months. This a problem in a country where **95 percent** of its population **live** on about **four percent** of its **land**. It is thought that the population of Egypt will be around 128 million by 2030. So what are the **solutions** to these problems? One plan is **to invest billions** of pounds in a new capital city **outside** Cairo. This is one of the big **projects** that will help the 700,000 young people who start looking for work each year.

Interviewer: Hello everyone. In today's show **I'll be talking** to my guest, Dr Sarita Parker, who's an **expert on** the rainforests in Borneo. Welcome to the show, Dr Parker.

Dr Parker: It's great to be with you, John.

Interviewer: Now, we all think that we know what a rainforest is, but how would you describe it?

Dr Parker: A rainforest has a lot of trees and many different **types** of animals and plants live in it. And it's a place that's usually very hot and it rains a lot, too.

Interviewer: And what can you tell us about the rainforests in Borneo?

Dr Parker: Well, Borneo is a **large island** in **South-East** Asia, and it **has** one of the oldest rainforests in the world. However, recently the island has become hotter and there has been less rain than usual. And scientists think that there will be even less rainfall on the island in the next few years.

Interviewer: Why is that?

Dr Parker: unfortunately, some farmers are **cutting down** trees and starting fires so they can grow crops and keep **livestock** there. Now the rainforest is about thirty **percent** smaller today than it was forty years ago. And if there's less rainforest, there's less rain and the island will get even hotter, you see. So, we're very **worried** that farmers are going to continue to damage the rainforest over the next few decades. That would be **terrible for** the animals and plant life in the rainforest, and Borneo would **heat up** even more.

Interviewer: Do you think those farmers will keep cutting down so many trees in the future, or will they use more sustainable ways to grow crops and keep livestock?

Dr Parker: Well, it won't be easy. Of course, many farmers are just trying to **feed** their families, however, we hope that in a few years' time, more farmers will be using **sustainable farming** techniques and things will **improve**. They need more information about how they can plant new trees and **move crops** around from one field to **another each** year. But farmers won't change and they understand why they need to **change** and they have everything they need to do that. **Many organizations** will be **running** an education programme next month to help them.

Interviewer: Thank you very much for your time, Dr Parker.

=====

Amir: Is that your homework, Hany?

Hany: Yes, What's wrong with it? It took me ages.

Amir: I can see that. It's very long.

Hany: So what?

Amir: Well, we were asked to write a summary, and yours looks longer than the text we're summarizing! You know it should be shorter, right?

Hany: Yes, I know that. But I didn't want to miss anything important.

Amir: So, what was the text about?

Hany: I can't remember, but it's all in my summary.

Amir: My friend, you need to think more and write less. Start by reading the whole text and try to understand as much as you can. Ask yourself: What's the main idea? How would I explain it to a friend quickly? Don't start writing anything until you've done that.

Hany: But you know me. I always forget something important.

Amir: Then you should read the text again. But the second time, underline the most important words or phrases in it.

These are usually nouns for the things or people that the text is about, verbs for important actions, or phrases for times and places.

Hany: Okay.

Amir: After that, try to only look at the important words that you underlined when you're writing your summary. And just write complete sentences that fill in the gaps between those words.

Hany: I see.

Amir: It's also helpful to use words or phrases that show the order in which things happen. Phrases like "first", "after that" or "finally".

Hany: And then?

Amir: When you've finished writing your summary, read it again , check that it is clear , and then look back at the original text to see if you have included all the important information know where they got that information.

Exercises On Vocabulary

1. The closure of the factory will cause great.....to the local economy.

a-help

b-profit

c-damage

d-interests

2. Some greedy farmers use special.....to make the crops grow faster.

a-chemicals

b-paints

c-ingredients

d-components

3. The water of the factory is heated using.....from the sun.

a-atom

b-reactor

c-energy

d-wind

4. the government should make a new policy to protect the

a-environment

b-employment

c-treatment

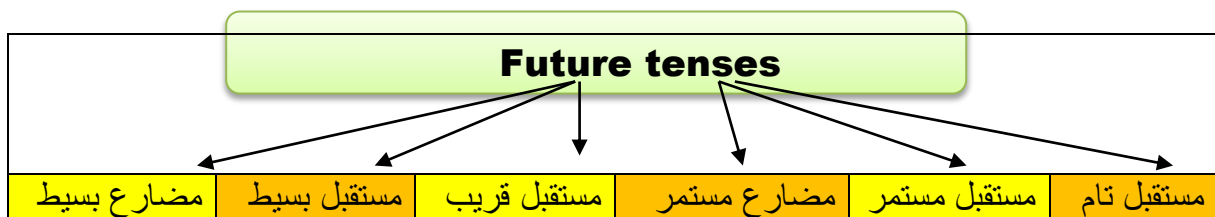
d-payment

5. A\An....is a person who studies something carefully and tries to discover new facts about it.

- a-graduate b-explore c-researcher d-conductor**
 6. We should do more and more efforts tomoney for our new project.
- a-spend b-attribute c-save d-waste**
 7. Cooperation and teamwork are two necessary qualities for theand progress of any society.
- a-succeed b-success c-successful d-successfully**
 8. As my cousin is colour blind, he can't.....the difference between some colours.
- a-report b-invent c-tell d-accept**
 9. I decided to try tennis insteadvolleyball in the sports club.
- a-in b-at c-of d-for**
 10. The word "ignore" can be the opposite to the word.....
- a-apply b-neglect c-mention d-invent**
 11. ----- is the science of growing plants and keeping animals.
- a)Industry b) Agriculture c) Tourism d) Welding**
 12. The government should put a clear ----- policy to help improve agriculture .
- a) cultural b) intellectual c) agricultural d) cultivate**
 13. Farmers should give due care to their ----- such as cows , sheep and birds.
- a) cutlery b) kettle c) cattle d) livestock**
 14. Lack of water has affected badly on rice ----- in Egypt .
- a) production b) introduction c) producer d) productive**
 15. We aspire to have ----- development in our country .
- a) sustain b) sustainable c) unsustainable d) comfortable**
 16. There is a wide ----- of crops to grow in our land .
- a) vary b) various c) variety d) variable**
 17. Tourism and the suez canal are the most important----- of our national income.
- a) sources b) sorts c) original d) sauce**
 18. Poor families spend about 80 to 90 ----- of their income on food
- a)per b) hundred c) cent d) per cent**
 19. The antonym of the word tiny is (small – hug – huge – minute)
- a) agriculture b) population c) industry d) innovation**
 20. The increase in ----- hinders our progress and our development.
- a) solutions b) solve c) salutation d) sanitation**
 21. It is easy for the wise leader to find immediate ----- to his people's problems.
- a) waste b) lose c) invest d) investment**
 22. Can you tell me about a project in which I can ----- my money?
- a) statistics b) economics c) hydroponics d) hibernation**
 23. The expansion of building on the agricultural land will push us to depend on-----
- a-wet b- dry c- drought d- dryness**
 24. The weather istoday . I will take my umbrella .
- a) electricity b) electric c) electrical d) electronic**
 25. To save petrol , most of the world countries have begun to use ----- vehicles.
- a- in b- of c- to d- too**
 26. The salary will be fixed according qualifications and experience.
- a) according b) recording c) cord d) recorder**
 27. We wanted to buy a big villa but it was a case of cutting our coat ----- to our cloth
- a) according b) recording c) cord d) recorder**
 28. I can solve this problem in ----- of a couple of hours .

- a) timing b) space c) only d) about
29. His failure is a direct ----- his carelessness
- a) result b) result from c) result in d) result of
30. the United ----- organisation has an office in most countries of the world.
- a) Countries b) States c) Nations d) National
31. Your low income is dueyour laziness .
- a- to b-of c-from d-on
32. the earthquake has ----- a lot of damage to the houses in the area
- a) done b) made c) given d) brought
33. Any investment ----- an element of risk-
- a) revolves b) involves c) solves d) resolves
34. This liquid can ----- any spot of oil from your clothes .It is effective in washing.
- a) pollute b) stain c) remove d) move
35. Do you think ----- change has affected our yields of agriculture ?
- a) climate b) weather c) air d) soil
36. How far is Mount Everest above sea?
- a- standard b-devil c- level d- lava
37. i want to know the real reason your negligence .اهمال
- a) of b) for c) about d) with
38. Cutting down ----- has affected our climate negatively .
- a) grass b) plants c) rainforests d) weeds
39. Enironmentalists want the governments to punish those who ----- rainforests.
- a) protect b) conserve c) reserve d) destroy
40. What are the causes the fires occurring in the rainforests?
- A) of b) for c)with d)at
41. People believe that we will depend on ----- as a new source of food from the sea .
- a) rice b) wheat c) algae d) meat
42. My father lives in his fourthHe is still young.
- a)century b) decade c) millennium d) year
43. The teacher has focused some important points in his explanation.
- A) in b) at c) on d) of
44. I have writen a long about pollution for homework.
- a- essay b- story c-book d- brochure
45. Do you think learning online can ----- learning in schools?
- a) place b) displace c) replace d) replacement.
46. Asia is the biggest in the world .
- a- country b- state c- nation d- continent
47. The police are looking for any ----- to solve the mystery of the crime.
- a) evidence b) evident c) victim c) innocent
48. Some people cut forests to use its wood to make furniture.
- a- of b- up c- down d- off
49. Before building the High Dam our was fertile .
- (a-earth b- ground c- soil d- floor
50. Because of lack of silt , our soil needs a contionous supply of ----- fertilizers.
- a) chemical b) chemistry c) chemicals d) chemist
51. Can we depend on hydroponics instead ----- the traditional way of farming.

- a) off b) on c) of d) for
52. The essay contains a number of ----- errors.
a) fact b) reality c) actually d) factual
53. I hate ----- especially flies and mosquitoes .
a) animals b) insects c) birds d) livestock
54. I think ----- life is better than rural life as you can enjoy all facilities there.
a) urban b) farm c) village d) countryside
55. football is an outdoor game but basketball is played -----
a) indoor b) outdoor c) indoors d) outdoors
56. He ----- from their remarks that they were not in favour of the plan.
a) included b) concluded c) conclusion d) induce
57. King Lear was not ----- enough to divide his kingdom between his daughters
a) unwise b) wisdom c) foolish d) wise.
58. The ----- of the king should be honest , loyal and faithful to continue in his service
a) servants b) queens c) sons d) daughters
59. The king was in ----- in the market to find out if the traders were honest or not.
a) his clothes b) disguise c) distract d) discourage



زمن المضارع البسيط

Form

التصريف الأول / التصريف الأول + s

و يستخدم التعبير عن المستقبل مع الأشياء التي تعمل وفق جدول مواعيد مثل "القطار - الطيران - الدروس - المستشفيات - العمل - الامتحانات"

The plane takes off at 8 o'clock and arrives in London at 12 o'clock

قد يكون المضارع مثبت او منفي:

☉ This lesson doesn't finish until 2 o'clock.

☉ The library opens at 8 a.m tomorrow

1-Tomorrow morning the first lesson at school.....at 7 o'clock.

a) starts b) was starting c) will start d) started

2-the bank.....at 9 o'clock tomorrow.

a) opened b) is opening c) open d) opens

و غالبا يستخدم هذا الزمن مع افعال مثل

start ,finish , arrive , leave , land , take off ,open ,close

2. زمن المستقبل البسيط The future simple

Form

shall /will +inf

متى نستخدم shall ؟ نستخدم هذا الفعل مع we, I

في حالات محددة 1- الاقتراح 2- عرض مساعدة على شكل سؤال 3- طلب النصح

☉ (shall -will) we go for a swim?

اقتراح

عرض مساعدة (shall-will) I open the door for you ?

طلب النصح (will-shall) I do ? My computer has stopped , what

متى نستخدم will

| | |
|---|---|
| 1- prediction التنبؤ | I think Ali (will-is going -is) pass the test tomorrow |
| كيف اعرف انه تنبؤ من بعض الافعال و الاحوال مثل : expect –think – sure – perhaps –possible –probably –believe –suppose –hope –certainly | |
| 2- future facts حقائق مستقبلية | Marwa (will –is going to –is) be 16 on Monday. |
| 3- Promise وعد | If you succeed I (will –am going to)buy you a present. |
| 4- threat تهديد | I (will –am going to) fire you if you don't concentrate on your work. |
| 5- offer عرض بجملة خبرية | I (shall-will-am going) lend you some money if you want |
| 6- quick decisions قرار سريع | That's the phone ,I (will-am going to –shall)answer it. اي اننا نستخدم هذا الزمن مع Has just decided – decided just now – his quick decision is that |
| 7- warning التحذير | Study hard or you (will-are going to)fail. |
| 9- Hopes الامال | I hope our team (will-is going to)win. |
| 10- fixed connectors روابط ثابتة | After , as soon as , when → مضارع بسيط / تام → .will+inf After we finish , we (will-shall-are going to) have rest |

3. المستقبل القريب

Form → am, is are going to +inf

و هو يدل-حدث على وشك الحدوث و له دليل في الحاضر

☛ The sky is cloudy , it (will-is going to)rain

ملحوظة اذا وجد دليل مع الفعل think فهذا ايضا حدث على وشك الحدوث و ليس تنبؤ

☛ The sky is cloudy , I think it (will-is going to) rain

☛ Look out ! you (will-are going to)fall

قد يكون الدليل عبارة عن تحذير

و لكن لاحظ اذا تبع التحذير بـ or اصبح will

☛ Look out or you (will-are going to)fall

☛ This is a clever boy , I think he (will-is going to)be a doctor

الصفات الثابتة لا يفضل استخدامها كدليل

☛ He is a careless driver , I think he (will – is going to)have an accident

☛ He drives carelessly , I think he (will – is going to)have an accident

☛ Liverpool's players are known to be skilled. They the match easily.

are winning b. are going to win c. win d. will win

في الجملة السابقة يجوز معاملة killed على انها صفة ثابتة او متغيرة لذا will or are going to الافضل

2- يدل على حدث له خطة /نية / تم التقرير له
Planned-intended-decided

☛ Sarah and Mohammed have made plans that theytomorrow.

d)shall skate c)skate b)will skate a)are going to skate

☛ I have decided that IEnglish this afternoon.

d)am studying c)am going to study b)will study a)study

4. زمن المضارع المستمر

Form..... → am ,is ,are +v"ing"

و يدل على حدث مرتب او معد او مجهز له من قبل

arranged , prepared , organized

☛ He is(killing –going to kill) his wife tomorrow , he has arranged everything

لاحظ الملاحظات الاتية جيدا:

..... → تحديد الموعد + مضارع مستمر/ مضارع تام **am ,is ,are +v"ing"**
 → لم يتم تحديد الموعد + مضارع مستمر **am ,is are going to +inf**

☑ He has saved money as he is (**buying**-going to buy) a car next month

☉ He is saving money as he is (buying-**going to buy**) a car

..... كلمة تدل على زمن معين + تحديد الموعد → تمشى حسب الكلمة الدالة
 لا يوجد كلمة تدل على زمن + تحديد الموعد → **am, is , are +v"ing"**

☑ He (**is meeting** –is going to meet) Ali at 7p.m

☉ He is (meeting-**going to meet**) Ali at 7p.m , he has planned that

إذا كان التحديد للموعد جملة خبرية فالاختيار الصحيح مضارع مستمر

إذا كان التحديد للموعد في جملة استفهامية فالاختيار صح و لكن الافضل مستقبل قريب عن المضارع المستمر

☑ We are (**playing**-going to play) this afternoon

☉ Are we (playing-**going to play**) this afternoon?

5- المستقبل المستمر Will be + v"ing

يعبر عن حدث سوف يكون مستمر في وقت محدد في المستقبل

between.....and..... from.....to.....
 at 7 o'clock tomorrow this time tomorrow/..... then

Don't phone me at 7 p.m tomorrow as I will (sleep-**be sleeping**) then

Between 8 and 10 tomorrow I will (take-**be taking**) my exam

2- كما يستخدم المستقبل المستمر للتعبير عن حدث سوف يكون مستمرا عندما يقطعه حدث آخر أو عندما يتم حدث آخر في المستقبل. (تقاطع)

- I **will be waiting** for you when your bus arrives.

- I'll **be staying** at Madison Hotel, if anything *happens* and **you need** to contact me.

- He **will be studying** at the library tonight, so he will not see Jennifer when she *arrives*.

3- كما يستخدم المستقبل المستمر للتعبير عن حدثين سوف يكونان مستمران معا في نفس الوقت في المستقبل. (توازي) و هنا يفضل وضع الزمن الذي بعد الرابطة مضارع بسيط او مستمر

- At the party tomorrow, Ahmed **will be singing** while Sarah **is dancing**.

I **will be working** hard next week while you **are relaxing** on the beach.

4- يستخدم المستقبل المستمر أيضا عندما نخمن ما يفعله شخص الآن

- Don't call him now, he'll **be doing** his homework.

- I don't want to disturb them. I'm sure they'll **be cleaning** their house at the moment.

5- لا يستخدم المستقبل المستمر مع الأفعال التي تعبر عن حالة (أفعال الشعور – الامتلاك – الكينونة – قصيرة المدى).

Be – have – own – possess – want – join – know – seem – love – like – admire – prefer –

- Maher **will be** at my house when you arrive. (Not: will be being)

- After I study, I **will know** all the answers for the test. (Not: will be knowing)

may be + V.ing

- يستخدم (may be v.ing) للتعبير عن أحداث محتملة الحدوث (أحداث غير مؤكدة) ستكون مستمرة في المستقبل

- I can't visit you because I will / may be doing my homework this evening.

- In 100 years, people **may be living** in space.

- When she's 21, she **may be working** in London.

Will have +p.p

6 زمن المستقبل التام

يدل على اتمام حدث في وقت معين في المستقبل

زمن في المستقبل + By

In two years' time

Before/By the time مستقبل بسيط او تام و الافضل تام + مضارع بسيط

By 2050 , we will(build-have built)the bridge

قد يكون الفعل في المبني للمجهول

☺In three years' time ,the road will.....

a)have been paved

c)have paved

b)pave

a)be paved

Before Ali comes , we will (do-have done)the homework

المعنى هو الاساس في ازمة المستقبل ركز مع الامثلة

☛By 2030 we will(build – have built) 20 schools☛By 2030 , most of the people all over the world will (speak – have spoken) English☛By 7 o'clock tonight I will (be doing – have done)the homework so I can't come with you☛By 7 o'clock tonight , I will (be doing – have done) the homework so we can go out**-Choose the correct answer : practice**

- Tomorrow , I.....to a secret location . I have arranged for that
a)am travelling b)will travel c)am going travel d)travel
- they.....probably be in space for about five or six days
a)should b)can c)shall d)will
- I'm sure tomorrow's match.....really exciting
a)is being b)will be c)is going to be d)might be
- My train.....at 7.15 this evening
a)is going to leave b)leaves c)will leave d)is leaving
- I think my brother.....a doctor, he is clever .
a)is going to be b)will be c)would be d)is
- My plans for tomorrow morning is that I.....prof Afifi
a)am going to meet b)meet c)will meet d)will be meeting
- A:this year , I'm going on holiday to Alex . B: I'm sure you.....it
a)will enjoy b)are enjoying c)enjoy d)are going to enjoy
- I think my brother a doctor , he's very clever
a)is b)will be c)is being d)is going to be
- Are you tennis after school today ?
a)play b)going to play c)will play d)playing
- I expect he the exam
a)pass b)passes c)is passing d)will pass
- Between 7 and 9 I sleeping
a)am b)will be c)am being d)will have
- Haneen 16 on Monday
a)will be b)is c)is going to d)is being
- He a plan for his study , he has intended to do that
a)is making b)will make c)will be making d)is going to make
- I think the weather in England cold and rainy .
a) will be b) is going to be c) is being d) shall be
- There's not a cloud in the sky – it another very sunny day .
a) will be b) is going to be c) is being d) will
- They lots of sports here soon, they've prepared for this .
a) are going to start b) will start c) are starting d) start

- 17- I think you very good at squash .
 a) is going to be b) are being c) are going to d) will be
- 18- I've planned. I try hockey .
 a) will b) am going to c) am doing to d) won't
- 19- I've decided what to do at the weekend. I my uncle .
 a) am going visit b) will visit c) am going to visit d) is visiting
- 20-I.....the summer holiday in Marsa Matrouh as planned.
 a-am going to spend b-will spend c-am spending d-would spend

Exercises on Grammar

Choose the correct answer:

- Don't be late. The bus at exactly ten o'clock!
 a) leaves b) going to leave c) has left d) left
- A lot of people are waiting for the museum to open. It..... busy there today!
 a) is being b) was c) is going to be d) has been
- It is very hot in the house. I on the air conditioner.
 a) am turning b) turn c) will turn d) am going to turn
- We can't use classroom five tomorrow because they..... the walls.
 a) paint b) will have painted c) are painting d) will paint
- Your bags look heavy. I you to carry them.
 a) will be helped b) am helping c) help d) will help
- The teacher says that we relative clauses next week.
 a) going to study b) study c) are studying d) studying
- My grandfather..... 70 on his next birthday!
 a) is being b) will be c) is going to be d) will have been
- At ten o'clock tomorrow, I on a train to Aswan.
 a) travel b) will have travelled c) going to travel d) will be travelling
- We studying this book by the end of this year.
 a) finish b) will be finishing c) will have finished d) are finishing
- Tomorrow we're playing tennis from 3 o'clock until 4.30. So at 4 o'clock, we..... tennis.
 a) are playing b) will be playing c) will have played d) played
- Tomorrow we're playing tennis from 3 o'clock until 4.30. So at 5 o'clock, we..... tennis.
 a) are playing b) will be playing c) will have played d) played
- There are no clouds in the sky today. I think that it..... very hot.
 a) 's going to be b) will be c) has been d) was
- I predict that in the future mobile phones..... much smaller.
 a) were b) are going to be c) are d) will be
- There's a book club meeting after school at 2 p.m. and everyone..... there.
 a) will go b) are going c) is going d) go
- I'll call you when I at my hotel.
 a) arrives b) will arrive c) arrive d) am arriving
- The train to Cairo is on platform four and it..... in thirty minutes.
 a) left b) leaves c) has left d) will leave
- Those bags look heavy, so I..... them for you.
 a) carries b) am carrying c) will carry d) carried
- Don't phone her now. She.....dinner.
 a) will have b) may be having c) will have had d) are having
- At one o'clock tomorrow, I..... lunch with my friends.
 a) was eating b) eating c) will be eating d) ate
- By ten o'clock tonight, I..... all my homework.

- a) will finish b) will have finished c) finish d) will be finishing
21. Let's eat dinner when John..... here.
- a) gets b) will get c) will have get d) get
22. Experts think that Cairo by more than half a million people next year.
- a) will grow b) will have grown c) will be growing d) grows
23. Wea family party on Saturday. Would you like to come?
- a) are having b) will have c) have d) is going to have
24. Our last lesson at two o'clock this afternoon.
- a) will finish b) are going to finish c) finishes d) are finishing
25. Look, there's a sandstorm. Ithe windows.
- a) closed b) close c) will have closed d) will close
26. I can't see you later this evening. I..... my homework.
- a) did b) will do c) 'm doing d) was doing
27. There's a good film on TV tonight. It..... at ten o'clock.
- a) will finish b) finishes c) has finished d) is finishing
28. Please wait here until the nurse you.
- a) call b) calls c) is calling d) will call
29. I'm going to the airport in a minute. My plane at ten o'clock.
- a) leave b) is leaving c) leaves d) will leave
30. Look, I can give you a lift to the station because I.....that way anyway.
- a) won't drive b) will have driven c) drives d) will be driving
31. I'm sure that youyour time with us in Cairo.
- a) enjoys b) will enjoy c) will have enjoyed d) are enjoying
32. In the future, computers..... traditional books.
- a) will replace b) will be replaced c) will be replacing d) will be replaced
33. In the future most of our work by machines.
- a) will be doing b) has been done c) will be d) will be done
34. By the time we get to the stadium. The match.....
- a) will have started b) was starting c) is starting d) had started
35. In the future, every new book will probably be..... as an e-book.
- a) publish b) publishing c) published d) publishes
36. We hope that the road..... early morning traffic.
- a) is reducing b) will have been reduced c) will be reduced d) will reduce
37. She's going to look for a job as soon as she in London.
- a) arrive b) have arrived c) will arrive d) arrives
38. There won't be anyone in the office. Everyone..... home.
- a) will be going b) will have gone c) go d) have gone
39. Don't phone me before 8 o'clock, we..... dinner.
- a) will have b) will be having c) will have had d) are having
40. This time tomorrow, we'll be celebrating because we our exams.
- a) will finish b) will have finished c) will be finishing d) are finishing
41. By the time you get home, I.....the house from top to bottom.
- a) will clean b) will be cleaning c) will have cleaned d) am cleaning
42. I.....to the Book Fair to buy the books I need. This is my attention.
- a-will have gone b-am going to go c-am going d-will go
43. I don't think the exam.....difficult.
- a-will be b-is going to c-will have been d-is being
44. My brother has decided to immigrate. Henext month.
- a-will travel b-travels c-is going to travel d-is travelling
45. Next year, my grandfather.....75 years old.
- a-will be b-is c-will have been d-is being

Unit 4

Changing English

| | | | | | |
|--------------|----------------|---------------|-------------|---------------|----------------|
| abbreviation | اختصار | suitable | مناسب | name | أذكر اسم |
| later | فيما بعد | no longer | لم يعد | side | جانب |
| latter | الآخر - الثاني | formal | رسمي | in response | ردا علي |
| laugh | يضحك - ضحكة | linguist | اللغوي | upset | منزعج - متضايق |
| laughter | الضحك | innovator | مجدد | worried | قلق |
| a gap | فجوة | actually | في الواقع | receive | يستقبل |
| argue | يجادل | introduce | يدخل | selfie | سيلفي |
| argument | جدال | basic | أساسي | phrases | عبارات |
| hope | أمل - يأمل | function | وظيفة | words | كلمات |
| maths | رياضيات | positive | إيجابي | prefix | بادئة |
| a title | لقب - عنوان | negative | سلبي | suffix | لاحقة |
| adults | الكبار | order | أمر - يأمر | statement | بيان |
| reader | قارئ | request | طلب | support | يؤيد |
| require | يتطلب | encourage | يشجع | debate | مناظرة |
| grammar | قواعد | warn | يحذر | effects | آثار |
| punctuation | ترقيم | advantages | مزايا | modern | حديث |
| appear | يظهر | merits | مزايا | society | مجتمع |
| disappear | يختفي | disadvantages | عيوب | rather than | بدلا من |
| emoji | إشعار | demerits | عيوب | Other than | بخلاف |
| frown | يتجهم | a joke | ينكت - نكتة | misunderstand | يسيء فهم |
| tips | نصائح | port | ميناء | reward | يكافئ |
| proper | لائق | ruin | يدمر | persuade | يقنع |
| confused | مشوش | headline | عنوان | profit | ربح |
| confusing | مربك | guard | حارس | stab | يطعن |
| mansion | قصر | pretend | يتظاهر | plot | يتامر |
| Remain | يبقي | follow | يتبع | beggar | متسول |
| disbelief | كفر | faithful | مخلص | | |

Definitions

| | |
|-----------------|--|
| abbreviation | A short form of a word |
| emoji | Images with certain expressions used on messaging |
| formal | Official ; following an agreed or official way of doing things |
| innovator | A person who introduce new things |
| linguist | A person who knows several foreign languages well |
| tone | The change in your voice that shows what you are feeling or thinking. |
| misunderstand | Not understand properly |
| not necessarily | A response to something that has been said that may not be true or correct |
| to frown | To have an expression on your face that shows you are not happy |
| joke | Something that you say or do to make people laugh |

| | |
|------------------|--|
| messaging | To send a text message to somebody |
| response | A spoken or written answer |
| ruin | To damage something so badly that it loses all its value |
| Speed up | To move a long quickly . |

Prepositions& expressions

| | | | |
|------------------------|--------------|----------------------------|---------------------|
| suitable for | مناسب لـ | see you later | أراك فيما بعد |
| encourage to | يشجع علي | as soon as possible | بسرعة بقدر المستطاع |
| discourage from | يثبط الهمة | language innovator | مجدد في اللغة |
| pros and cons | مزايا و عيوب | text messages | رسائل نصية |
| worried about | قلق علي | stay in touch with | يبقي علي اتصال |
| get upset | ينزعج | lose touch with | يفقد اتصال مع |

Synonyms and Antonyms

| word | المعنى | synonym | antonym | المعنى |
|-------------------|-------------|---------------------|------------------------|------------|
| hope | يأمل | wish | despair | يئأس |
| formal | رسمي | official | informal | غير رسمي |
| understand | يفهم | grasp | misunderstand | يسيء الفهم |
| upset | متضايق | annoyed | Happy / content | سعيد |
| encourage | يشجع | support | discourage | يثبط |
| necessary | ضروري | essential | unnecessary | غير ضروري |
| negative | سلبي | passive | positive | إيجابي |
| disappear | يختفي | vanish | appear | يظهر |
| argument | جدال - خلاف | disagreement | agreement | اتفاق |

Expressions

| | | | |
|----------------------|-----------------------------|---------------------------|--------------------------|
| create new words | يبتكر مفردات جديدة | get lost | يضل الطريق |
| create new jobs | يوفر وظائف جديدة | get advice | يحصل علي نصيحة |
| create pollution | يسبب التلوث | get upset | ينزعج |
| include images | يتضمن صور | get.....wrong | يفهم شيء خطأ |
| introduce a new idea | يقدم فكرة جديدة | do wrong | يرتكب خطأ |
| introduce a solution | يقدم حلا | in response to | استجابة لـ |
| feel special | يشعر بالتميز | at a different time | في وقت آخر |
| add some salt | يضيف بعض الملح | be aware of | علي وعي |
| be careful with | يحرص علي | keep in touch with | يبقي علي اتصال مع |
| be friends with | يكون صداقة مع | negative advice | نصح سلبي |
| couldn't stop crying | لم يستطع منع نفسه من البكاء | no longer able to | لم يعد قادرا علي |
| since = ever since | منذ ذلك الحين | a - 15- year old daughter | بنت تبلغ من العمر 15 عام |
| facial expressions | تعبيرات الوجه | Add a sub-heading | يضيف عنوانا فرعيا |

Prepositions

| | | | |
|---------------------|----------------|-------------|----------------------|
| warn to + inf | يحذر ان | learn about | يتعلم عن |
| warn not to | يحذر الا | apply for | يتقدم بطلب |
| take away | يبعد | agree with | ييتفق مع شخص أو فكرة |
| put down | يترك | reply to | يرد على |

حاجات لذيدة : هي صيغة مختصرة من الكلمات لتمثيل الكل فقط وهنا ليس شرط الحروف الأولى .

Abbreviations

| الكلمة | Abbreviation | Meaning |
|----------|--------------|---------|
| You | U | أنت |
| Your | Ur | ملكك |
| Thanks | Thx | متشكر |
| Please | Plz | من فضلك |
| Great | Gr8 | عظيم |
| Tomorrow | 2 Moro | غدا |

_ Thx is a more of (acronym _ abbreviation) of thank you .

_ (Acronym _ Abbreviation) is a group of letters that refer to the beginning of the words

| | | |
|------------------------------|---------|----------------------------|
| As soon as possible | ASAp | بأسرع ما يمكن |
| The united states of America | U-S-A | الولايات المتحدة الأمريكية |
| See you later | C U L8r | أراك لاحقا |
| I don't know | I d k | لست أدري |
| Laugh out loud | L O L | يضحك بصوت عال |

Don't get confused

| | | | |
|--------------|----------------------|--------------|---|
| photo | صورة يلتقطها شخص آخر | selfie | صورة يلتقطها الشخص بنفسه (له أو له و الآخرين) |
| emoji | اموجن | blog | تغريدة على الانترنت |
| linguists | علماء اللغة | bloggers | المغردون |
| introduction | مقدمة | conclusion | خاتمه |
| headlines | عناوين اخبار | sub-headings | عناوين فرعيه |
| necessary | ضروري | necessarily | بالضرورة |
| message | رساله / يرسل | messaging | المراسله |
| necessitate | يحتتم | necessity | ضرورة |

Abbreviation .

Abbreviate = Shorten (to)

Abbreviated (to) = Short

Abbreviation

Be the abbreviation of/for

_ The U.S.A is (abbreviate – abbreviated -an abbreviation) of the united states of America .

_ The president gave an (abbreviation – abbreviated) speech .

_ The world health organization is abbreviated (of – to) who .

يختصر كلمة أو عبارة إلي

مختصر (إلي)

اختصار

اختصار

Communicate .

Communicate with يتواصل مع شخص **Communicate in +** لغة يتواصل بـ
Communicate ينتقل... إلى to شيء **Communicate = infect** يعدي
Communicable = infections معدي **Communication** تواصل
Communications وسائل الاتصال **means of communication** وسائل الاتصال
System of communication نظام الاتصال

- _ I always communicate (by – with) foreign people easily .
 _ I hope to communicate (by _ in) English .
 _ He has communicated the news (for _ to) us .
 _ Flu is a (communication _ communicable) disease .
 _ The internet has become one of the best means of (communicate _ communication)

Tone

| | | | |
|----------------|--------------------|------|------------|
| Tone | نبرة الصوت | Tone | يشد – يقوي |
| Tone .....down | يخفف من / يلفظ حدة | Tune | لحن |

- _ I think his sharp (tone _ tune) will make me angry .
 _ You must smile to tone the situation (up _ down).
 _ (Tone _ Tune) is the musical sound inside the verse .
 _ Her friendly (tune _ tone) encouraged me to ask her for help .

Mis

| | | | |
|---------------|---------|---------|--------------|
| misgovern | يحكم | misuse | يسيء استخدام |
| misunderstand | يسئ فهم | mistake | يخطئ |

re

| | | | |
|---------|------------|--------|------------|
| rewrite | يعيد كتابة | redo | يعيد فعل |
| reuse | يعيد تشغيل | replay | يعيد تشغيل |

un

| | | | |
|--------|--------------|-----------|----------|
| unlike | علي عكس | unchanged | ثابت |
| undo | يلغي . يتوقف | untidy | غير مرتب |

Able

| | | | |
|--------------|------------------|------------|--------------|
| recognizable | يمكن التعرف عليه | changeable | قابل للتغيير |
| readable | قابل للقراءة | available | متاح |

er تعطي اسم شخص

| | | | |
|--------|------|---------|--------|
| writer | كاتب | user | مستخدم |
| reader | قارئ | speaker | متحدث |

Less

| | | | |
|----------|-----------|-----------|-------------|
| careless | مهمل | powerless | ضعيف |
| useless | بلا فائدة | endless | لانهايه لها |

Make

| | | | |
|-----------------------|--------------------|----------------|-------------------|
| make a comment | يلقب | make a joke | يلقب |
| make different sounds | يصدر أصواتا مختلفة | make new words | يبتكر كلمات جديدة |

make sense

يعطى معنى

make difference

يحدث تغييرا

Everyday**Everyday (adj)**

يومي وتأتي قبل الاسم

Everyday language لغه يوميه everyday use استخدام يومي Everyday life الحياه اليوميه

Every day (adv)

يومية وتأتي في بدايه او نهايه الجمله

-He plays football (every day- everyday).

-English has become part of our (everyday- every day) life.

Like

Like + اسم لا يأتي بعدها اسم alike + اسم لا يأتي بعدها اسم

1-like يفضل - يحب

-He (likes – alike) English very much.

2-like = for example مثال علي ذلك

-He has a lot of polite students (like- alike) Ramy and Samy.

3-Like = similar to يشبه به

-Mona is (like – alike) Heba, they are polite.

Alike = similar شبيه ولا يأتي بعدها اسم

Alike to = similar to شبيه ب

-Mona and Heba are (like – alike) they are short.

-Mona and Heba are (like – alike) to each other.

Like مثل unlike بخلاف

(Unlike – Like) his brother, he is tall.

لاحظ التركيبات الاتيه:

The \ a-an

A 9-year-old boy

اسم الموصوف + صقه + اسم مفرد + رقم

ولد في سن التاسعه

a-an \ the-He is expert on the 20th century history.

اسم موصوف + اسم مفرد + رقم

a \ an

-He attended a 3 days' cause.

اسم مفرد + "اسم جمع + رقم

اذا وجدنا time فاننا نستخدم معها 's اسم مفرد

-He will leave in an hour's time.

-He will leave in two hours' time.

-other than

بخلاف \ غير \ زياده علي \ بالاضافه الي

-rather than

افضل من \ بدلا من

-You should be good at Arabic **other than** English.-I suggest you study your lessons **rather than** play games on the mobile

©Frown يرفع - يرفض | لا يوافق © Frown on يعبس | يشيح بوجه | عبوس

- 1- He frowned as he reread the letter.
- 2- On his face he wore a deep, permanent frown.
- 3- Personal phone calls are frowned on at work.

©Guard وصي © Guardian يحرس - حارس

- 1- There was an armed guard on duty outside his door.
- 2- They saw themselves as the guardians of morality. اوصياء علي الاخلاق

© Beggar يعتقد اعتقاد لا يصدق ©beggar belief يرجو - يترجي beg \ begged شحاذ

- 1- Beggars can't be choosers.
- 2- The stupidity of people sometimes beggars belief.

© Reward جناح - عنبر award جائزة رسميه - يمنح مكافاه

- 1- The holiday was a reward for 40 years' service with the company.
- 2- He was awarded the Military star.
- 3- The children's ward is really neglected.

© Profit= benefit (from) يربح - يكسب make a profit ربح | فائده | عائد- يربح

- 4- It would profit us to change our plans.
- 5- This is an application of profits earned.
- 6- Profits rose 31% to £144 million.
- 7- Investors have made a 14% profit in just 3 months.
- 8- The profit on that deal was £21 million.
- 9- All the profits from the sales of the CD will go to the charitable Society.
- 10- They were buying goods and reselling them at a profit.
- 11- They kill whales for profit.

© Plot (n.) (v.) يتآمر - يكيده - مكيدة - مؤامرة - حبكة دراميه © plotter متآمر

- 1- They make a plot against the government
- 2- The two men are accused of a plot to bomb an American plane.
- 3- Between them, they had hatched(made) a clever plot to claim insurance money.

©Disbelief منكر - كافر - جاحد ©disbeliever جحود - كفر - انكار

- 1- Public reaction to the announcement has been one of shock and disbelief.
- 2- An expression of disbelief crossed his face.
- 3- Liz stared at us in disbelief as we told her what had happened.

©Faithful- loyal - committed الايمان - الوفاء - الاخلاص faith (n.) مخلص - وفي

- 1- He had always been a faithful friend.
- 2- He remained faithful to his beliefs.
- 3- I'm delighted to know you have such faith in me.
- 4- The public have lost faith in what the government is doing.
- 5- Maybe we put too much faith in doctors and medicine.
- 6- The attack has destroyed his faith in humankind.

7- They seemed to accept everything he said with blind faith.

©Port ميناء (بري - بحري - جوي) رصيف ميناء

1- We'll have to spend 10 days in port for repairs.

2- New York is the busiest port on the East Coast.

3- The wind kept us in harbour until the following afternoon.

Personal شئون الافراد والموظفين شخصی personnel

1- My own personal view is that boxing should be banned.

2- She works in personnel.

Diary = journal مدونه علي النت مفكره ورقيه يوميات شخص blog

1- She was angry when I read her diary

2- I present English lessons on my blog.

Reading (1)

Plz read this article ASAP. It's gr8. Hope u like it

For any readers who can't understand the language of **text message**, the translation is: Please read this article as soon as possible. It's great. I hope you like it.

In text message, **abbreviations**, **emojis** and **numbers** are all used to make **communication**

quicker. The languages of text message **doesn't require** correct spelling, or difficult grammar and **punctuation**.

Messaging language is appearing in **everyday** English more often. When people write emails, many of them use a lot of **abbreviations** and **emojis** g.. some people use less punctuation, but others use more than they need!! Um.

So, is messaging language damaging English? Messaging language may be **fun** to use with friends, but it isn't **suitable** in **formal** emails. And now teachers are worried that some teenagers are no longer able to speak or write using English correctly. However, some **Linguists** suggest that the people who use messaging language **are actually** language **innovators**, introducing new ideas into English. They **argue** that messaging language is quick, short and **communicates a lot in** a small space.

Whether or **not** you like messaging language, English is continuing to change. Perhaps it would be a good idea to learn some of the **basic abbreviations** so you can enjoy **talking** to your friends with fun, short messages.

Shakespeare and the English language

Language is always changing, and new words are **created** all the time. We need new words to describe new technology, ideas and situations. For example, before people took **photos** of **themselves** on their **phones**, we didn't need a word for that. But when everyone started doing it, the **word selfie** became very useful, and it was **added to dictionaries** in 2013. Many famous dictionaries **add** new words every year, and sometimes they **remove** words and **phrases** that we don't use anymore.



Shakespeare was a great **innovator** with language, and he added more words and **phrases** into the English language than anyone else. He made new words by changing verbs into **adjectives**, changing nouns **into** verbs, and connecting words to make new words he also added **prefixes** and **suffixes**, for example, he created **uncomfortable** from **comfortable**.

Today the language that Shakespeare **used** can **sound difficult**, but he was writing in a way that made his stories easy for people to understand at that time.

Like messaging language, Shakespeare made new words from other words that everyone already knew. Then he used his words to describe the things that people most wanted to talk about.

Emoji fun!

Yesterday, **my four-year-old sister** sent her grandparents some **text message** from my phone. The problem is, there are no words, just a long line of **emojis**. This is **confusing** because our **grandparents** think the messages are from me! **Should I have taken** the phone away from my sister? When a child **begins** to learn how to speak, they first make **different** sounds. It seems that children do the same with **messaging**. They use **emojis** rather than **proper words** to **communicate** what they want to say. But is this a good thing? Yes! Young children are learning to **communicate**. **With** text messages, children can **receive** and read **replies** which are written just for them. I'm sure this will **make** them **feel special** and they will want to communicate more. So, **instead of** taking phones away from children, perhaps we should give them our phones more often and say, "**send** your **grandparents** a message".

Endless change

The Romans spoke a language **called Latin** and they first took it to the country they called **Britannia** almost two thousand years ago. However, the English language came from **Germany** when people called **Angles** and **Saxons** arrived about 500 years later. Soon the land of the Angles became known as England and the English that have been using and misusing foreign words ever since. For example, words like cake, eggs and happy all come from **Old Norse**, which was the language spoken by the Vikings who came to England a few years after the Angles. However, many more English words came from the French, who arrived in 1066. **Unlike** the poor people, who **continued** speaking English, all the rich and **powerful** people spoke French. That's why there are so many words in English with similar meanings. French words are **recognizable** because they usually describe something which is better. For example, the word house is an English word, but a big house is called a **mansion**, which is a French word. In the modern age, we often **reuse** old words from the past to make new **international** words for technology. For example, the first part of the word **helicopter** is Greek and the second part is Latin, but the word was first used by a **Russian** speaker living in America.

The aim of this report is to summarize the **findings** of the **survey** into the time students spend using social media. Between 2015 and 2020, we asked 1,200 students about the **amount** of time they spent using **social media**. We also asked them how they used social media, and what they liked and disliked about using it. We **records** our results and **compared** them. Most of the students that we **spoke to** were surprised by how much time they spent **on** social media when they thought about it **carefully**. Many students thought that they were **spending** too much time on social media and some students said that they **would try** to spend less time on social media. Some students reported that **at least one** member of their family had made a **negative comment** about it.

However, almost all of the students reported that they enjoyed using social media and most of the students did not want to stop using it. Most students **used** social media on their **phones**. The students used social media to **keep in touch with** their friends, and to follow their interests or hobbies. **In general**, students enjoy social media and they are using it more often. However, it is making a small number of students worried because they feel that they are spending too much time on it.

Listening

A radio programme about messaging

Presenter: Hello everyone, thanks **for joining** me today on Afternoon **Talk time**. And today we are talking about messaging. My guest today is Dr **Magda** Morsy. She is the author of the book A Guide to messaging which encourages us **to** use messaging **positively**. Welcome **to** the programme, Magda.

Dr Magda: Thank you. **It's lovely to be here.**

Presenter: So, many parents are worried about their children and messaging. I myself have **a 15-year-old daughter** and we had an example of a messaging problem just yesterday when she **came down** to dinner **very upset**. She couldn't stop **crying**.

Eventually she **admitted** that she was upset because of her friend.

They were messaging and having fun, but then **my** daughter, Talia, had written LOL – laugh out loud – in response to a photo her friend, Mona, had posted of herself. Talia thought it was a funny photo. She waited for an hour, but Mona didn't reply. Talia couldn't understand what the problem was and was worried that Mona was upset with her.

Dr Magda: This is a good example of why we need to be aware of the advantages and disadvantages of messaging, and how it can very easily make us worried and upset if we get it wrong.

Presenter: because messaging is **different to** speaking **face -to – face**, isn't it?

Dr Magda: Exactly! Sometimes face – to – face communication can be **confusing**, it's easy to feel the other person isn't listening for example, or isn't **interested in** what you are saying, but messaging can be much more **confusing**. And this is **basically** because you can't see the other person's face – is he or she **smiling** or **frowning**? And you can't hear their voice – are they angry? Are they **making a joke**? Are they **feeling sad**? And you can't see their body **movements**. When we speak to someone **face- to - face**, we **notice** all these things; **facial expressions**, **body movements** and the **tone** of

what they are saying. When we message, we have to guess a lot of these things. This means we can often misunderstand what the other person is trying to communicate.

Presenter: So, that's the negative side of messaging. Is there appositive side?

Dr Magda: yes, of course. Messaging is great for staying in touch with friends but remember that messaging is designed to be short and quick so don't expect to have long conversations, and don't get upset when you get one word or even an abbreviation or acronym as a response to your message.

Presenter: So, what should my daughter, Talia, have done yesterday evening?

Dr Magda? Well, first of all, she shouldn't have got upset so quickly. Just because you don't get an immediate reply does not necessarily mean that the person is not interested in chatting with you. People are busy and they have got other things to do. So, she shouldn't have sat in her room for an hour looking at have put her phone and waiting for Mona to reply. She should have put her phone later. And of course. If she was really worried, she could have called and spoken to Mona. She could have messaged and said, can I call you?

Presenter: So, I think Dr Magda is telling us to remember that sometimes more traditional communication is important.

Dr Magda: I am! Absolutely. Messaging is one form of communication not the only form of communication

Presenter: Great – thank you, Dr Magda Morsy. Next on the programme.

Speaker 1:

Tips on how to write a successful blog post

1-start with your topic. Think about what will interest and inform your reader.

2-Start with a headline for your blog. A headline should tell the reader what the blog is about. It should be short, give information, be interesting and make the reader want to read the rest of the blog.

3-Find a suitable photo or picture that will show the reader what the blog post is about,

4-plan the sections of your blog. Add sub-heading for each section \ new point.

5-Write your introduction paragraph. Be clear what the purpose of this blog post is. Speak to the reader – use first and third person. Include a question.

6-Write the main body of the blog. Keep sentences and paragraphs short. Include images where useful. Do research to find facts to include.

7-Write a conclusion. Refer back to your headline and your introduction. Do not include new information in your conclusion. Speak to your reader again and include yourself; use “we”.

8-Read and correct your blog post. Check spelling, grammar and punctuation. Check that you have not respected key ideas too frequently. Use an online thesaurus to avoid repeating the same word too many times.

9-Ask a friend to read your blog post. Does it make sense to them?

10-cite all your sources of information.

Video script

Smartphones are changing the way we choose to communicate with each other. More people use their phones to send and receive message than they do to make phone calls.

Messaging is quick and cheap. We can keep in contact with friends, make and check arrangements, send photos, ask questions and receive answers within seconds.

Messaging is now more popular than emails, especially between friends and family. Messaging increased by 7,000 % in the ten years between 2007 and 2017 and is still rising. Reports suggest that more than 560 billion text message are sent around the world every month. And it seems that teenagers send more than most adults.

Staying in contact with people is really important and messaging is a fun way to do this, but we need to remember that text messaging is not the same as having a conversation or spending time with someone: that's important too.

Exercises on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The popularity of text.....has brought unexpected gains to mobile network owners.
a-messaging b-form c-page d-topic
- When I text a word tomorrow on a chat on What's App or SMS. I write.....
a-2mazo b-plz c-thx d-idk
- The new application enables the mobile users to send.....messages to a lot of people at the same time.
a-magnetic b-text c-electrical d-toxic
- When you want to write a polite request expression at the end of a sentence on phone message or a chat, you can type the abbreviation.
a-LoL b-plz c-ASAP d-gr8
- The abbreviation of the adjective "great" in social media and internet language is.....
a-ASAP b-gr8 c-thx d-plz
- When you send a \ anyou can also send a sound or graphic file as an attachment.
a-sigs b-mark c-telegram d-e-mail
- The doctors werethat the patient might have suffered brain damage.
a-pleased b-thankful c-worried d-blissful
- Ahmed works in a certifiedcenter that translates official papers that are submitted to the embassies.
a-place b-presentation c-abbreviation d-translation
- Don'twith your sister. Sit down and discuss your problems.
a-worry b-agree c-argue d-appear
- Dr.Zewail was a\ anas he presented many new ideas in the field of chemistry.
a-idiot b-innovator c-philosopher d-linguist
- never knew that the "Amt" stood for "amount".
a-acronym b-emoji c-abbreviation d-antonym
- Are you sure you didn't.....him? He can't have said that.
a-undermine b-practise c-undergo d-misunderstand
- You must.....your computer password frequently so that no stranger can use your personal information.
a-interchange b-change c-intercode d-exchange

14-Just because a film has a cast of well-known actors, it does not.....mean it will be successful.

a-necessarily b-unimportantly c-violently d-unnecessarily

15-They have to have aunderstanding of computers in order to use the advanced technology.

a-basic b-lazy c-busy d-fussy

16-She's a very impatient person. She wants everything done.....

a-in vain b-immediately c-carelessly d-later

17-The lack of rain.....severe shortages of fresh fruit and vegetables.

a-created b-issued c-reduced d-frowned

18-The sales assistants are trained to deal.....customer complaints in a friendly manner.

a-up b-for c-against d-with

19-I must look up this word in the....., because I don't remember what it means.

a-essay b-catalogue c-dictionary d-language

20-Wifi is a system for.....electronic devices to the internet without using wires.

a-contacting b-connecting c-contracting d-communicating

21-Mahmoud I used to..... turned against me after being told that I'd been insulting him.

a-be an enemy with b-make a friend by
c-have a friend with d-be friends with

22-She criticized my writing, but.....that was very constructive. I learned a lot from her.

a-on a way b-by the system c-in a way d-in which it

23-The report can be traditionally divided into three main.....

a-spaces b-sections c-words d-sentences

24-It is said that dolphins use sound to.....with each other.

a-contact b-connect c-communicate d-link

25-Mohamesangrily when he read the letter that the office sent him.

a-smiled b-rewarded c-frowned d-introduced

26-All staff members are expected to attend the next importantabout the company's future.

a-conference b-interview c-meeting d-appointment

27-Some distant villages in Africa lack.....services such as water and electricity.

a-minor b-unimportant c-trivial d-basic

28-My father believes that religion had ainfluence on our society as it helps implanting morals.

a-perplexing b-passive c-positive d-negative

29-The house where my.....lived is being demolished because it was old.

a-grandchildren b-sons c-grandparents d-visitors

30-A lot of people believe that the computer is the most important.....invention.

a-designed b-modern c-ancient d-devised

31-This.....of the hypermarket sells meat products like hot dogs and burgers.

a-college b-centre c-section d-sale

32-My aunt became ill and had to retire as a teacher before reaching the.....of 62.

a-number b-age c-decade d-era

33-Scientiststhe results of both scientific experiments carefully.

a-completed b-compared c-conducted d-coded

34-The young painter paints real.....of working-class communities.

a-photos b-images c-accounts d-description

35-I recommend that you buy a more.....computer to get the project ready soon.

a-helpless b-ancient c-updated powerful

36-The bird is easily.....because of its bright red feathers.

a-recognize b-recognition c-recognizable d-unrecognized

37-The winter puts enough detail into the story to make it.....

a-interest b-interested c-interesting d-unintended

38-The journalists who attended the conferencenotes of the most important points.

a-filled b-drew c-gave d-took

39-I don't have any suit which is suitable.....the party.

a-for b-about c-on d-over

40-The noun "analysis" is a synonym to the noun.....

a-intention b-application c-diploma d-survey

Grammar

REPORTED IMPERATIVES, SUGGESTIONS AND ADVICE

الأمر و الاقتراح و النصيحة في الغير مباشر

Don't forget

| | |
|--|--|
| • encourage ... to / not to + inf | • warn ... to / not to + inf |
| • ask ... to / not to + inf | • advise ... to/not to + inf |
| • allow to / not to + inf | • order to / not to + inf |
| • agree to + inf | • tell to / not to + inf |

| | |
|----------------------------|--|
| • Suggest + v-ing | • Suggest that فاعل should + inf |
| • Recommend + v-ing | • Recommend that فاعل should + inf |

- يتم تحويل الأمر و الاقتراح و النصيحة إلى الغير المباشر باستخدام:

(not) to + infinitive + مفعول + فعل قول مناسب

- "Open your books." - The teacher **told / asked / ordered us to open** our books.
- "Don't waste time." - My father **advised me not to waste** time.
- "Study science at university." - Ali **encouraged his friend to study** science at university.
- "If I were you, I'd take your coat." - My **mother advised me to take** my coat.

(that) و لكن يأتي بعده (جملة كاملة + say) بعد الفعل (+ to - لا نستخدم المصدر)

- "Don't park there." - The policeman **said that** we must not park there.

(v.ing) يأتي بعدهما (suggest / recommend) أفعال القول

- "Do Exercise 2 again." - Leila **suggested doing / that I do** Exercise 2 again.
- "You should revise quietly." - My friend **recommended revising / that I revise** quietly

(that) يمكن أن يأتي بعدهما (المصدر + فاعل + suggest / recommend) أفعال القول

- "Do Exercise 2 again." - Leila **suggested (that) I do** Exercise 2 again.

- أفعال القول (suggest / recommend) يمكن أن يأتي بعدهما (المصدر + should + فاعل + that)

- "You should revise quietly." - My friend **recommended** that I should revise quietly
- يتم اختيار فعل قول مناسب للجملة من حيث المعنى: لاحظ الأمثلة الآتية
- The doctor said to me, "Stop smoking!" - The doctor **told** me to stop smoking.
- "Get out of the car!" said the policeman. - The policeman **ordered** him to get out of the car.
- "Could you please be quiet," she said. - She **asked** me to be quiet.
- The man with the gun said to us, "Don't move!"
- The man with the gun **warned** us not to move.

- أحيانا يمكن تحويل الأمر في غير المباشر إلى (مفعول + asked for)

- "Can I have an apple?", she asked. - She **asked for** an apple.
- "Can I have the newspaper, please?" - He **asked for** the newspaper.
- "May I have a glass of water?" he said. - He **asked for** a glass of water.
- "Sugar, please." - She **asked for** the sugar.
- "Could I have three kilos of onions?" - He **asked for** three kilos of onions.

- يمكن التعبير عن النصح بأكثر من طريقة

- **You should** take some exercise. - **You ought to** eat more fruit and vegetables.
- **Why don't you** go jogging? - **How about** eating less sugary food?
- If I were you, I would revise my lessons regularly.

- يمكن التعبير عن النصح بقوة باستخدام ('have to' - 'must')

- **You must** see a doctor - **You have to** take her to see that movie. She'll love it!

- يمكن التعبير عن النصح بجملة أمرية تبدأ بالمصدر

- **Start going** to the gym. - **Stop drinking** so much coke.
- **Consider switching** to brown bread and rice. - **Try cycling** to work.

- كل طرق التعبير عن النصح يتم تحويلها في غير المباشر إلى (مصدر + (not) to + مفعول + advise)

- If I were you, I would revise my lessons regularly.
- He **advised me to revise** my lessons regularly.
- We said to her, "**You must** see a doctor." - **We advised her** to see a doctor.

Mini Test Grammar (1)

1-Our leader instructed us.....our safety precautions.

a-take **b-be take** **d-to take**

2-My father encouraged me.....hard.

a-to study **b-studying** **d-to study**

3-Ola advised Reham.....the hotel her CV

a-not sending **b-to send** **d-send**

4-My friend.....me to attend his party.

a-ordered **b-advised** **c-invited**

5-The doctor.....me to stay in bed for some time.

a-taught **b-advised** **c-expected**

6-The fire fighter warned us.....near the fire.

a-not to come **b-coming** **d-come**

7-He told me.....my mother.

a-to help **b-helped** **c-help**

Should / ought to ينبغي / يجب

1- تستخدم should - ought to لاعطاء النصيحة:

Subj. + should/shouldn't + inf
Subj. + ought to/ought not to (oughtn't) to + inf

- You should work hard to achieve your goal . you shouldn't waste your time
- One ought to keep fit . he or she ought not to eat unhealthy food

2- كما تستخدم should-ought to لتوجيه اللوم أو التعبير عن الندم لعدم القيام في الماضي بشيء كان من المفترض القيام به :

Subj. + should / ought to + have + p.p

ندم- كان يجب ان افعل I should have taken my medicine on time
 لو م- كان يجب القيام بذلك you ought to have arrived early

3- وتستخدم ought not to - shouldn't لتوجيه اللوم أو التعبير عن الندم للقيام بشيء في الماضي كان من المفترض عدم القيام به:

Subj. + shouldn't/ought not (oughtn't) to + have + p.p

ندم- كان يجب الا افعل ذلك I oughtn't to have shouted at my sister
 لوم- كان من المفترض عدم القيام بذلك you shouldn't have added too much salt
 عندما نجد had to/should have + p.p في اختيار واحد

| | |
|--------------------------|---|
| Should have + p.p | كان يجب ان يفعل ولكنه لم يفعل و هنا اللوم |
| Had to + inf | كان مضطرا ان يفعل اي انه فعل و هنا ضرورة حدوث شيء في الماضي |

1- He (should have borrowed - had to borrow) some money from his brother . he borrowed from his friend

2- He (should have borrowed - had to borrow) some money from his brother but he gave him just half of the sum

نستخدم Should بعد why للاستفسار عن سبب الالتزام

لماذا ينبغي ان ادفع زياده؟ Why should I pay extra?
 Why shouldn't we ask questions during the meeting?

الصيغة المستمرة في Should

Should be + v -ing

Ought to be + v-ing

وتشير هذه الصيغة ان الفاعل لا يتصرف بشكل جيد

☛ -Mona ought to be studying now.

اي انها تفعل شيء اخر الان

☹ --Ramy shouldn't be spending money like so.

اي انه ينفق الاموال بشكل مسرف

Should + inf = be meant to + inf

- ☹-He is meant to be in the meeting
- ☹-He should be at the meeting.
- ☹*-You shouldn't make noise.
- ☹*-You aren't meant to make noise.

Mini Test should

- 1-they are our best friends. They.....be invited to the party.
a-can't b-should c-shouldn't
- 2-Ahmed.....to be at home by now. He is probably at home.
a-should b-shouldn't c-ought
- 3-You.....your friend yesterday. He was in a problem.
a-should help b-should have helped c-ought have helped
- 4-He.....have worn such heavy clothes. It wasn't very cold.
a-should b-ought to c-shouldn't
- 5-He should be.....now instead of playing.
a-studied b-study c-studying
- 6-The report should be.....now.
a-written b-writes c-writing
- 7-Now you have failed. You.....your time when you had the time.
a-shouldn't waste b-shouldn't have wasted c-should have wasted
- 8-You should have.....me about the time of the meeting.
a-tell b-told c-be told

Deduction الاستنتاج

الاستنتاج يعنى الاستنباط من خلال دليل قوى أو ضعيف فى الحاضر أو الماضى و يتلخص الاستنتاج فى الآتى:-

| | | | |
|--------------------|---------|--------|------------------------------------|
| must + inf | أكيد | → ماضى | must have + p.p |
| can't + inf | لا يمكن | → | can't / couldn't have + p.p |

الفارق بين كلمة can't , must هو المعنى مثل :-

- He gets up early he (must -can't) be active " must "
- He plays well, he (must -can't) have trained badly. " can't "
- My father (must -can't) have walked to work this morning his car is still in the garage . " **must** "
- Ali wasn't at the meeting, he (must -can't) have read my e-mail to come. " can't "
- You (must -can't) have finished that book already, you have just bought it yesterday and it's long. " can't "

و كذلك المعنى يلعب دوراً بالنسبة للمضارع و الماضى

- Ali is absent today he must (**be** – have been) ill.
- Ali was absent yesterday he must (be – **have been**) ill.
- Dr. Mazen is a good professor, he must (be – **have been**) a good student .
- I can't find my keys, Aml must (take – **have taken**) them .
- I can't find my wallet, it must (take – have taken – **have been taken**) by a thief .

هناك كلمات تعطى الإشارة لـ must مثل :-

Sure , certain , definitely

- ☺He must be a doctor = I'm sure he is a doctor.
- ☺He must have gone = I'm certain he went

هناك كلمات للإشارة لـ can't

Sure , certain , definitely + نفى / impossible

- He **can't** have passed the exam = It's impossible that he passed the exam.
- It windy last night there are broken trees.
 - a) must be b) **must have been** c) can't be d) can't have been
- Surely, they must (use – used – **have used**) many slaves to dig the suez canal.
- He is an honest man, he stolen it.
 - a) should have b) **can't have** c) must have d) might have
- Ali forgotten the date, he's got a very good memory.
 - a) might have b) must have c) **can't have** d) can't be

may, might , could + inf **may, could , might have + p.p**

و تعني احتمال أو شك في حدوث الشيء .

It's possible , it's probable , I'm less certain, I'm not sure, perhaps - I doubt it.

- He (must – **might**) have rung. I'm not sure .
- She may (**go** – have gone) to Alex. I doubt that he will do .

May , could + inf **Might have + p.p** احتمال بنسبة 50% احتمال بنسبة 30%

عندما نجد **haven't decided yet / don't think so** يفضل استخدام **might** المثبتة أو **may not** المنفية

- He (may – **might** – could) join the faculty of pharmacy, he hasn't decided yet.
- He (**may** – might – must) have played, I'm not sure .

Could have + p.p = may / might have + p.p احتمال

Could have + p.p كان من الممكن أن يفعل و لكن لم يفعل

- He travelled by train but he (must – **could** – may) have travelled by plane .

Should + inf يجب **should have + p.p** كان يجب **Should not + inf** يجب **shouldn't have + p.p** لم يكن يجب و لكنه فعل

- Nour is late for school she have stayed up late last night .

- a) mustn't b) can't c) **shouldn't**
- ملاحظات خفيفة للطلبة الظرفية

Mustn't have +p.p 1: لا يوجد شيء في اللغة الانجليزية اسمة

Can have +p.p لا يوجد شيء في اللغة الانجليزية

- You **mustn't** have finished that book already (can't)
- He **can** have run yesterday (might)

2-- أحيانا يمكن أن تعبر الجملة عن الاستمرار وفي هذه الحالة نستخدم

- **must / can't / may/ might / could+ be + v.ing**
- What is Ali doing in his room? - I'm not sure. He may be studying.
- **must / can't / may/ might / could+ have been + v.ing**
- What was Linda doing? - She must have been working on her computer.
- **Should / ought to** يجب أن

- تستخدم هذه الأفعال لإعطاء النصائح

- In summer, tourists **should wear** a hat and **ought not to sit** in the sun.

- You should take a rest. = It is a good idea to take a rest.

should have / ought to have + p.p.

كان يجب أن

- تستخدم هذه الأفعال عندما نوجه اللوم لشخص لعدم قيامه بعمل معين كان يفترض القيام به

Should not have / ought not (to) have + p.p.

كان لا يجب أن

ought not (to) have + p.p.

يمكن الاستغناء عن to

- تستخدم هذه الأفعال عندما نوجه اللوم لشخص لقيامه بعمل معين كان يفترض عدم القيام به

- You **shouldn't have arrived** late for your exam.

- I'm sorry! I **ought to have come** on time.

Mini test possibility

1-she is late. She.....have taken wrong

a-might not

b-may

c-should

2-He.....a lawyer, but he didn't and lost the case.

a-consulted

b-must have consulted

c-could have consulted

3-Ramy.....his exam as he seems to be happy.

a-could pass

b-could have passed

c-can't have passed

4-I.....more quickly if my suitcase hadn't been heavy.

a-can walk

b-could have walked

c-should walk

5-You.....the bus if you had been here at 1 o'clock but it's gone now and it's too late.

a-could have caught

b-shouldn't have caught

c-might catch

6-He looks tired. He.....have been a wake all night.

a-might

b-can't

c-couldn't

7-He.....been working in the garage when we arrived that might be why he didn't hear the bell.

a-could have

b-shouldn't have

c-can't have

8-Tom walked into a wall. He.....have been looking where he was going.

a-couldn't

b-might

c-could

Exercises on Grammar

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1-He.....have asked me before he took my bike. I'm annoyed.

a-oughtn't

b-should

c-needn't

d-must

2-He.....have been a great doctor. He had the ability but he didn't want to work.

a-can't

b-must

c-could

d-might

3-Ali.....have forgotten about the meeting. I told him this morning.

a-can't

b-must

c-might

d-should

4-You.....have been rude to him. He's going to be really angry now.

a-shouldn't

b-couldn't

c-can't

d-should

5-We...have donated some money to the poor. It was the right thing to do but we didn't do it.

a-ought to

b-shouldn't

c-must

d-might

6-I.....have eaten so much chocolate! I feel sick.

a-couldn't

b-could

c-should

d-shouldn't

7-He.....have been more tolerant. Everyone was angry with him.

a-must

b-ought to

c-shouldn't

d-might

8-Hehave finished his exams yet. I'm not sure.

a-might not

b-can't

c-must

d-should

9-Don't ring the doorbell when you get there. Ola's little baby.....sleeping.

a-must be b-should be c-may not be d-may be

10-Now, you're in a bad need of money. You.....saving money years ago!

a-should have started b-could start

c-must have started d-might have started

11-Noha.....have left earlier. She missed her flight.

a-might b-must c-should d-shouldn't

12-Our neighbors.....have cut down the tree in their garden. It was a really beautiful tree.

a-should b-couldn't c-can't d-shouldn't

13-You.....him so much money when he asked. It will take you a lot of time to get it back.

a-should have lent b-shouldn't have lent c-should lend d-shouldn't be lent

14-They.....raised the price of essential articles. That was not right.

a-should not have b-should not be c-should have d-should

15-I don't like geography. Imath.

a-should have studied b-shouldn't study c-should studying d-should be studied

16-We got lost in Paris. We.....a map

a-shouldn't take b-should have taken c-should be d-should take

17-You.....checked your report thoroughly before you handed it in.

a-could be b-should have c-shouldn't be d-couldn't

18-I.....practiced playing the piano last week, but I was lazy and now I regret.

a-shouldn't have b-should have c-should have been d-shouldn't have been

19-You.....caught the boat if you had been here at one o'clock but it's gone now and it is too late.

a-should have been b-could have been c-shouldn't have d-could have

20-He.....harder, but he was too lazy and that's why he failed the exam.

a-could study b-should study c-may study d-could have studied

21-He.....to bed early instead of playing videos games with his friends.

a-should not go b-should be gone c-should be went d-should have gone

22-I.....married her when I had the chance.

a-should be b-should c-shouldn't be d-should have

23-Haven't they given you the money back yet? They.....it last Monday.

a-should have done b-should be done c-shouldn't do d-should have been

24-The flowers died, I should.....them more often.

a-have watered b-water c-be watered d-be watering

25-That was a very idea. You.....that

a-could have done b-won't do c-should not do d-shouldn't have done

26-I'm really tried today. I.....stayed awake so late last night.

a-should not have b-should not be c-could have d-could not have

27-It's getting cold. We.....brought our jackets.

a-should not be b-should have c-should be d-should being

28-She.....the test if she had studied harder.

a-will have passed b-could pass c-could be passed d-could have passed

Unit 5

Being smart online

| | | | |
|--------------|---------------|------------|-------------|
| smart | ذكي - أنيق | download | ينزل |
| research | يبحث - بحث | take down | يزيل |
| task | مهمة | excuse | عذر |
| avoid | يتجنب | upgrade | تحديث |
| unhelpful | غير متعاون | upload | يحمل |
| effectively | بفاعلية | banner | شعار |
| a company | شركة | cookies | كوكيز |
| experience | خبرة | advert | إعلان |
| knowledge | معرفة | advertise | يعلن |
| topic | موضوع | advertiser | معلن |
| Up- to -date | حديث | sponsor | راعي |
| reliable | موثوق فيه | target | هدف |
| update | يحدث | views | مشاهدات |
| consult | يستشير | comment | تعليق |
| extra | إضافي | specific | محدد |
| facts | حقائق | seem | يبدو |
| uniform | موحد | suppose | يفترض |
| resources | موارد | mean | يعني |
| image | صورة | social | اجتماعي |
| discussion | مناقشة | media | إعلام |
| wonderful | رائع | app | تطبيق |
| locate | يحدد موقع | survey | فحص-مسح |
| behaviour | سلوك | journalist | صحفي |
| profile | ملف | publish | ينشر |
| sensible | عقل | sociology | علم اجتماع |
| symbol | رمز | influence | تأثير |
| include | يشمل | fake | يزيف - زائف |
| entertain | يسلي | musician | موسيقيار |
| post | يرسل علي النت | spread | ينشر |
| rank | يصنف | register | يسجل |
| presentation | عرض | represent | يمثل |
| a set of | مجموعة من | highlight | يلقي ضوء |
| rules | قواعد | general | عام |
| digital | رقمية | link | يربط |
| footprints | أثار قدم | apologise | يعتذر |
| security | الأمن | double | يضاعف |
| subscribe | يشترك | patience | الصبر |

| | | | |
|-----------|-----------|--------------|--------------|
| private | خاص | go mad | يتجنن |
| follower | متابع | room | مكان |
| details | تفاصيل | shelter | مأوي-يأوي |
| install | يركب | interest | يهم - اهتمام |
| version | نسخة | spies | جواسيس |
| access to | اقتراب من | disagreement | عدم اتفاق |
| print | يطبع | set eyes on | ينظر |

Definitions تعريفات

| | | |
|----------------------|-------|--|
| consult | ..... | To ask somebody for advice |
| reliable | ..... | That can be trusted to do something well ; that you can rely on |
| update | ..... | To make something more modern and relevant by adding new information |
| Up-to-date | ..... | Modern / fashionable / having or including the most recent information |
| download | ..... | To move files from the internet to a phone , tablet or a computer |
| take down | ..... | To remove a message or photo you have put on social media |
| upgrade | ..... | To improve or make more efficient |
| upload | ..... | To move files from a computer , phone or camera to the internet |
| banner advert | ..... | An advertisement across the top or bottom or down the side of a page |
| cookies | ..... | Small pieces of information |
| search result | ..... | The result you get after searching for it on the internet |
| sponsored advert | ..... | To support an advertisement by paying for its cost |
| profile | ..... | A description of somebody that gives useful information |
| sensible | ..... | Able to make good judgments based on reason and experience rather than emotion |
| symbol | ..... | A person , an object , an event , etc , that represents a more general quality |
| behaviour | ..... | The way that somebody behaves, especially towards other people . |

Antonyms

| | | | |
|----------|------------------|-------------|--------------------|
| download | ينزل من الانترنت | upload | يرفع علي الانترنت |
| follow | يتابع | block | يحظر |
| follow | يتبع | break | يخالف |
| online | متصل بالانترنت | offline | غير متصل بالانترنت |
| reliable | موثوق ب | unreliable | غير موثوق ب |
| stupid | غني | intelligent | ذكي |
| specific | محدد | general | عام |
| suitable | مناسب | unsuitable | غير مناسب |

Synonyms

| | | |
|------------|-------------|-------------------------------|
| reliable | يعتمد عليه | dependable-trustworthy-honest |
| sensible | حكيم-عقلاني | rational-logical-reasonable |
| upgrade | يحسن | improve-enhance |
| up-to-date | محدث | modern-fashionable |
| forages | لفنره طويله | for along time |

1-This shirt is suitable for me the antonym of suitable is.....

a-imsuitable

b-unsuitable

d-irsuitable

2-The synonym of modern is.....

a-out-of-date

b-up-to-date

c-date

3-He is a dependable person it means he is.....

a-liar

b-reliable

c-dishonest

4-He is a sensible person, he is not

a-intelligent

b-player

c-foolish

5-You should obey the rules, it means you should.....them.

a-follow

b-break

c-buy

6-He has a negative answer not aone.

a-cons

b-pros

c-positive

7-You can't post on the internet as you are.....

a-by line

b-offline

c-highline

8-I haven't met him for along time, for a long time can be replaces by for.....

a-since

b-ages

c-time

prepositions

| | | | |
|----------------|------------------|----------------|------------------|
| adapt .....to | يكيف .....مع | put up | يرفع \| يضع |
| addict to | يدمن | read on | يستمر في القراءة |
| apply for | يتقدم بطلب | sell....to | يبيع.....ل |
| chat to \ with | يحدث مع | share.....with | يشارك .....مع |
| find out | يكشف | take down | يزيل منشور |
| go out | يخرج | | |

-I can adapt this student.....the new school.

a-by

b-for

c-to

-You shouldn't put.....your personal life on the internet.

a-for b-up c-on

-I will chat.....you tonight.

a-by b-with c-off

Expressions

| | | | |
|-------------------|----------------------|---------------------|-------------------|
| check my sources | اتحقق من مصادري | go online | يدخل علي الانترنت |
| name the sources | يذكر المصادر | do a task | يؤدي مهمة |
| do a post | يقوم بعمل مدونه | give.....a task | يعطى.....مهمة |
| pay attention to | ينتبه ل | do\ create an essay | يكتب مقال |
| game online | يلعب علي الانترنت | seem obvious | يبدو واضحا |
| have an access to | لديه مدخل \ سبيل نحو | | |

1-The answer of the question.....obvious.

a-plays

b-does

c-seems

2-I'll.....a perfect essay to you.

a-make

b-create

c-conduct

3-The student will.....this task.

a-do

b-make

c-run

4-I'm sick of study, I'llon line.

a-make

b-go

c-do

5-Mona has.....to technology.

a-accept

b-except

c-access

6-can you.....online.

a-sport

b-game

c-make

7-you must.....attention to them.

a-make

b-paid

c-pay

8-I have.....an important post.

a-made

b-done

c-played

9-you are honest as you.....your sources.

a-name

b-call

c-hide

sensible-sensitive

sensible

sensible man = wise man

عقلاني -حكيم-معقول

sensible idea=reasonable idea

sensitive

حساس -مرهف الحس- عنده حساسية

-He is aman, he always gives good ideas.

a-sense

b-sensitive

c-sensible

-She is.....to egg and fish.

a-sense

b-sensitive

c-sensitive

Don't get confused

| | | | |
|-----------------|--------------|---------------|-------------------|
| update | يحدث | upgrade | يحسن (يضيف مزايا) |
| software | برامج | hardware | مكونات الجهاز |
| announcement | اعلان (بيان) | advertisement | اعلان |
| app=application | تطبيق برنامج | application | طلب التحاق |

| | | | |
|---------------|-----------------------|---------------|---------------------------------------|
| commerce | تجاره | commercial | اعلان تجاري (في الراديو او التلفزيون) |
| update | يحدث (يجعل الشئ حديث) | upgrade | يحسن (يضيف مزايا) |
| download from | ينزل من علي الانترنت | upload to | يرفع الي الانترنت |
| rely on | يعتمد علي | reliable | يعتمد عليه |
| reliability | الدقه | reliance | الاعتماد |
| follow | يتبع | follower | متبع |
| profile | البروفائل | symbol | رمز |
| like | يحب | take down | يزيل |
| fake | مزيف | downloadable | قابل للنزول |
| district | مركز | district | يشئت |
| up-to-date | حديث | old fashioned | قديم |
| sponsored | ممول | free | مجانى |
| file | ملف | version | اصدار |
| install | يثبت | share | يشارك |
| research | يجري بحث علي | search | يفتش |
| chat | يدرش | fire | يطرد |

1-(Software- hardware) are the parts of the device.

2-(Software- hardware) are the programmes of the device.

3-My face book account always requires me to(update- upgrade) my personal data.

More Language notes

Experience تجربة مغل **experiment** تجارب حياتيه \ مواقف اسم يعد **experiences** خبرة (لا تعد)

He had much experience in education.

His experiences in France were depressing.

The students did an experiment in the lab.

Effective مؤثر فعال **impressive** مؤثر يترك انطباع **affecting** يثير شجن (مؤثر)

They made an effective cure for corona virus

Our trip to Aswan was very impressive

She cried a lot as the scene in the film was very affecting.

Publish ينشر (مطبوعات) **spread** ينتشر (حريق \ وباء \ مرض \ حريق)

This book was published in 2010.

The fire spread fast through the village .

Corona virus spread fast among the people all over the world .

He is spreading rumours about me. He envies me a lot.

Each / Every

يمكن أن نستخدم **each = every** بنفس المعني:

- I water the plants **every day**. = I water the plants **each day**.

نستخدم **each** للإشارة الي اثنين أو أكثر بينما تشير **every** الي ثلاثة أو أكثر:

- She had clearly been in a fight. She had bruises on **each leg** and cuts on **each arm** (each leg = both legs/ each arm = both arms)

- My parents have moved to the capital. **Each of them** works in a bank. (OR They both work..., / They each work

- He was holding a gun in **each hand** / in **both** hands.

تستخدم **each** عندما نفكر في أعضاء مجموعة ما كأفراد وتستخدم **every** عندما نفكر فيهم كوحدة واحدة:

Every third-year student will be examined orally in June. They will **each** be given a fifteen minute interview.

I gave **each** of my three brothers a card.

Every citizen has a role in society.

تستخدم **every** في حالة وجود الكلمات **almost/nearly/practically**

• This year I have visited **practically every** country in South-East Asia.

يستخدم بعد **each of** اسم جمع:

• **Each** of the students was given a prize.

تستخدم **every** بعد **of** إذا جاء بعدها كلمة **one** أو كلمات مثل **part/piece/member**

• every part of the country/every piece of the cake/every member of the team.

تستخدم **every one of** للأشخاص والأشياء بينما تستخدم **everyone** للأشخاص فقط:

• **Every one of** the students has a bike.

• **Everyone** enjoyed themselves on the beach.

يمكن أن تستخدم **each** قبل الفعل أو في نهاية الجملة:

• How much are these books? – They **each** cost \$30 / =They cost \$30 **each**.

Load يفرط في **overload** يفرغ حمولة **unload** يحمل | حمولة | عبء **التحميل**

download ينزل من النت **upload** يرفع علي النت

1. Women skillfully carry heavy **loads** on their heads.
2. She hadn't finished **unloading** the car.
3. both boats were **overloaded** and low in the water.
4. It would be wise to **download** your program to another computer before testing it.
5. Software is **uploaded** and **downloaded**.

Platform رصيف **sidewalk** رصيف شارع **pavement** رصيف قطار | منصة إلكترونية | منبر مشاة

المصدر الذي نحصل منه على المادة أو الشيء أو المعلومة أو .. الخ وقد يكون مكاناً أو إنساناً

Resources: الموارد (المواد أو الأشخاص أو غيرها) التي نحتاج إليها لتحقيق هدف ما

Local authorities complained that they lacked resources.

Mackerel is a good **source** of fish oil.

Resourceful man رجل كل العصور والمواقف

❖ **Sensible** حكيمة **sensitive** حساس

He rarely makes mistakes. He is really sensible

Try to deal with him carefully. He is very sensitive.

Skim: قراءة بغرض معرفة تفاصيل معينه **Scanning** قراءة سريعة لاختذ فكرة النص دون التفاصيل

seminar, symposium, colloquy مؤتمر **Conference** ندوة

room = space غرفة **a room** فراغ

دولة **smart country** ▶▶▶ تليفون ذكي **smart phone** ▶▶▶ قرية ذكية **smart village** ▶▶▶ ذكي **smart** ذكية

▶▶▶ **research** بحث ▶▶▶ **do research into = research into** يبحث في

▶▶▶ **avoid + v+ ing** ▶▶▶ You should avoid accompanying bad people .

| | |
|--|---|
| »» influence / effect / impact تأثير | »» Shakespeare was an influential writer كاتب موثر |
| »» effective فعال | »» you should take part in the race effectively بفاعلية |
| »» share يشارك = participate = take part in | »» effective participation مشاركة فعالة |
| »» accompany يصطحب | »» company صحبة |
| »» a company شركة = a firm | |
| »» rely on يعتمد علي | »» reliable موثوق – جدير بالثقة |
| »» unreliable غير جدير بالثقة | |
| »» reliance اعتماد = dependence | »» reliability = confidence ثقة |
| »» consult يستشير | »» I consult my lawyer in some cases |
| »» consultant مستشار | |
| »» aim هدف - يهدف | »» a goal هدف في المرمى |
| »» a goal هدف في الحياة | »» a target هدف |
| »» apply for يتقدم لوظيفة | »» applicant متقدم لوظيفة |
| »» apply يطبق | »» application تطبيق |
| »» behave يتصرف = conduct | »» behave yourself تأدب |
| »» behaviour = conduct سلوك | |
| »» symbolize يرمز | »» symbol رمز |
| »» The statue of liberty is the symbol of freedom | |
| »» slogan / motto شعار | »» a campaign slogan / شعار الحملة |
| »» a banner راية – علم | »» A huge banner over the street said " Welcome home" |
| »» sensible idea فكرة معقولة | »» sensible shoes (useful rather than fashionable) |
| »» digital رقمي (a digital camera / digital terrestrial and digital satellite) | |
| »» private property ممتلكات خاصة | »» special خاص exceptional (special circumstances) |
| »» register يسجل | »» I want to register my new car tomorrow . |
| »» score يسجل (a goal – a point) | »» record (Voices or sounds) |
| »» experiment تجربة معملية | »» an experience يجرب |
| »» experience يجرب | »» experience خبرة |

Reading 1

Your teacher has given you a homework **task**. Where do you start your research? The internet is very **useful with** lots of information, but how do you avoid **spending** hours **reading** unhelpful websites? Read on to find out how to use the internet **effectively**.

1-**Look for** websites by people, or universities, who have **experience** in or **knowledge** of the topic you are **researching**. If you know who wrote the websites, try to find out more **about** their experience.

2-Think **about** has written the website, is it a company who may be trying to sell you something?

3-**Check** if the website is **up-to-date**. Is the information still **reliable** and **useful**? When was it **updated**?

4-Always **consult** more than one website. The **advantage** of looking at few different sites is that you can **check** the information and you may find **extra** facts.

5-What does the website **look like**? If it is **badly designed** and is full of grammar and **spelling** mistakes, then it is probably not very **reliable**.

6-Websites that have named their sources are usually more **reliable** and useful than sites that do not name their sources.

7-**Save** the URL (uniform resources locator) of any **useful** pages or images so you can **find** them easily.

Reading 2

Targeted advertising

Our computers and smartphones keep small pieces of information called cookies, which tell websites where we've been online and what we were looking at. Cookies are meant to make it easier for us to find things that interest us, but they also help advertisers to sell things to us. So, when we see an advert for something that seems to be exactly what we want, it is because advertisers know what we like. This kind of advertising is called targeted advertising.

Sometimes advertisers know where you like to go and when you like to do things, so they can advertise to you when you are most interested. For example, they advertise places to eat when you're hungry. They can also send advertise to your friends at the same time if they think you'll go together.

Sometimes it's easy to see that something is an advert, like those large banner adverts that always seem to appear on websites when you're trying to read. And there are adverts that seem to appear in the strangest places, like the small sponsored adverts that you find in search results.

Adverts are supposed to be honest, but we must be careful. When see an adverts online, think about why you might be seeing it and whether you can believe what it says.

Reading 3

Essay Dun

Download this app and you will never have to write an essay again! Just type in the title ,the question you need to answer ,and the word limit and the app will consult the system to create a perfect essay. It is 100% reliable and works every time.

Reading 4

Excuse-a-maker

This useful app has been updated to include 2000new excuses which can be adapted to any situation. Just upload a photo of yourself and say why you need the excuse

Exercises on Vocabulary

1) Choose the correct answer from a , b , c , or d :

1- You look very (**smart – intelligent – fool – stupid**) in that suit.

2- I admit it was not the ----- thing I have ever did.

a) **smartest** b) **intelligent** c) **smarter** d) **smart**

3- Scientists are doing ----- to reach an effective vaccine for Corona Virus

a) **search** b) **research** c) **experience** d) **seek**

4- The driver take another road to ----- traffic jam on the main road.

a) **intrude** b) **void** c) **avoid** d) **vacuum**

5- detectives are now faced with the ----- of identifying the body .

a) **tusk** b) **task** c) **clerk** d) **deck**

6- the antonym of the word helpful is (**unhelpful – assist – assistant – cooperative**)

7- The company must reduce costs to compete -----

a) **effective** b) **efficient** c) **effectively** d) **effectiveness**

8- a company is the (opposite – antonym - object – synonym) of a firm

- 9-My lack of practical ----- was a disadvantage . I should have been experienced
 a) experiment b) experience c) experienced d)exposition
- 10-I ----- a moment of panic as I boarded the plane .
 a) experiment b) experience c) experienced d)exposition
- 11-My friend has a wide ----- of painting and music.
 a) knowledge b) ignorance c) negligence d)backward
- 12-We are keeping ----- with the latest developments .
 a) out of date b) old-fashioned c) up-to date d) dated
- 13-The main ----- of the conversation was Ahmed's new job.
 a) top b) topic c) tour d) tone
- 14-Keep the text short and on (**talk – subject – situation – topic**)
- 15- Businessmen are looking for someone who is ----- and hard-working.
 a) reliable b) unreliable c) comfortable d) liable
- 16-My mobile software is out of date so I must ----- it immediately .
 a) date b) upload c) update c) modern
- 17-if your headache continues , you should ----- your doctor .
 a) advise b) consult c) reconcile c) conceal
- 18-The word additional is the synonym of the word (**ex- infra – extra – mono**)
- 19- Growth has not been -----across the country .
 a) unicorn b) union c) unit d) uniform
- 20-Despite the -----that she was wearing a seat belt, she was thrown sharply forward.
 a) factual b) real c) fact d) faction
- 21- When i finish writing my notes , i will ----- them to the internet .
 a) upload b) download c) update d) upgrade
- 22-I want my computer system more powerful and efficient so I will ----- it soon ,
 a) upload b) download c) out of date d) upgrade
- 23- This man lies a lot . I can't depend on him as he is -----
 a) reliable b) unreliable c) comfortable d) liable
- 24- My grandson is fond of ----- a lot of games from the internet ,
 a) uploading b) downloading c) updating d) upgrading
- 25-Although Egypt enjoys plenty of ----- , it isn't an advanced country .
 a) resources b) sauce c) resorts d) savings
- 26-His public ----- is very different from the real person .
 a) image b) picture c) portrait d) painting.
- 27- Rescue planes are trying to ----- the missing sailors .
 a) sink b) drown c) locate d) duplicate
- 28-Workmen arrived to take ----- the scaffolding سقالات
 a) off b) down c) in d) after
- 29-A huge ----- over the street said " welcome home "
 a) motto b) slogan c) symbol d) banner
- 30- Live and let live . " That's my -----
 a) motto b) banner c) flag d) symbol "
- 31-Unless he finds a ----- to pay for him, he will be forced to retire from athletics.
 a) squad b) system c) sponsor d) spanish
- 32-The advertisements are intended to improve the company's -----
 a) image b) picture c) portrait d) painting

- 33-When the ----- came on , I got up to put the kettle on.
 a) actors b) actresses c) sponsors d) adverts
- 34- Set yourself ----- that you can reasonably hope to achieve .
 a) targets b) referee c) corners d) offside
- 35- Social media sites usually ask for your year of birth when you -----
 a) register b) record c) score d) save
- 36- I haven't updated my online ----- for ages .
 a) face b) name c) profile d) file
- 37-In my opinion ,----- media websites have affected our life entirely .
 a) sociable b) social c) society d) psychology
- 38- He is ----- to be on time for the conference .
 a) seemed b) imposed c) supposed d) refused
- 39-Children's television programmes aimed at a ----- age group .
 a) spicy b) specially c) sponsor d) specific
- 40-You have got a nice ----- on your mobile . Can you download it for me?
 a) app b) applicant c) apply d) ape
- 41- The government will do a new ----- to find out the number of the unemployed .
 a) quiz b) survey c) questionnaire d) riddle
- 42-I don't grasp what you ----- by saying these words.
 a) tell b) inform c) mean d) warn
- 43- His ----- towards us was becoming more and more aggressive عدواني
 a) behaviour b) behave c) profile d) picture
- 44- I want to update my Facebook (friends – profile – painting - comments)
- 45-I love the white colour .It is the ----- of purity .
 a) banner b) image c) symbol d) slogan
- 46- I think the (sense – sensible – sensitive – scary) idea is to take a taxi home .
- 47- If you ----- to this page , you will become a follower.
 a) subscribe b) take down c) view d) update
- 48- It is not----- to include a lot of personal information on your profile on social media
 a) bad b) not good c) sensible d) worse
- 49- Emojis are (sites – symbols – mottoes – slogans) which represent feelings.
- 50- Be careful when you ----- a photo on the internet .
 a) boost b) past c) post d) pass
- 51- Schools have a ----- of rules which should be followed by students.
 a) sat b) sit c) suit d) set
- 52- I pay a lot of money to have an ----- to the internet.
 a) access b) connection c) introduction d) contact
- 52-I will (print – paint – said – told) my notes by using a laser printer ,
- 53-The ----- works and writes for a newspaper or a magazine .
 a) teacher b) doctor c) journalist d) scientist
- 54- My brother works for a company that also ----- reference books
 a) punish b) publish c) spread d) push
- 55-The new technology has a great ----- on our life today .
 a) influence b) affect c) effective d) efficient
- 56 – The word fake is the (antonym – opposite – contrast –synonym) counterfeit .
- 57- Mohammed Abd-alwahab was a great ----- He composes يلحن a lot of music .

- a) writer b) musician c) journalist d) reporter
- 58- Can you (**spend – draw – spread – publish**) cheese on this loaf to make a sandwich.?
- 59- She is officially (**recorded – scored – said – registered**) as disabled .
- 60-The competition attracted over 500 contestants ----- 8 different countries.
- a) presenting b) representing c) coming d) going
- 61-The report ----- the major problems facing society today .
- a) highlights b) lights c) tells d) informs
- 62-Is there a (**link – lake – fake – lane**) between this murder and the robbery .
- 63- You have made a big mistake . You should ----- for everyone immediately .
- a) excuse b) recognize c) apologise d) apology .
- 64- I have read the article quickly to get a (**general – generally – genetic - genes**) idea

Seem حكاية

-seem +adj يبدو +صفه

- 1-Mona seems(happy- happiness)
2-Ramy seems (sad-sadly)

-seem to be +adj \ pp يبدو انه

- 1-He seems to be (anger-angry)
2-The door seems to be (broke-broken)

لا تنسى اننا لا نستخدم الفعل **Seem** في الازمنه المستمره

- 1-He (seems – is seeming) to be angry now.
2-Today, the weather (seems-is seeming) to be nice.

It seems \ seemed that +جمله

It seems \ seemed like +جمله

It seems \ seemed as if +جمله

It seems \ seemed as though+جمله

يبدو انه كما لو كان

- 1- -It seems as (by -if) he needs money.
2- -Yesterday she (was seeming -seemed) like he wanted to commit suicide.
3- -It seems (like -as) they are going out.
4- -It seems (whether- that) he will win.
5- -It seems (as-by) though they are playing a lot.

..... لاحظ في التركيبه السابقه يمكن وضع To+s

-It seems to me that I'll answer well.

Seem to +inf اثبات

Don't \ doesn't seem to +inf

Seem \ seems \ seemed not +inf

-He seems to study more.

- He doesn't seem to study more.
- He seems not to study more.

لاحظ ضيقه الاستمرار

(اثبات) **Seem to be +v - ing**

(نفي) **Doesn't \ don't \ didn't seem to be +v - ing**

- She seems to be watching someone.
- He doesn't seem to be waiting someone.

الصيغة التامة

Seem to have +p.p

يبدو وكأنه فعل

- He seems to have made the plan

لا تنسي هذه الصيغة

-there seems \ seemed to be + اسم

- there seems (to be- be) some difficulty in the exam.
- there seemed (to be- as if) no answer for my questions.

يفضل مع الأشياء غير الحقيقية تستخدم

Seem + adj

Seem to be + الصفة وليس

- He seems (to be older- **older**) than his father.
- He seems (to be-.....)younger than his son.

ملحوظة خفيفه للطلبة الظريفه
مع الحقائق يمكن استخدام

Seem (to be) + صفة

Appear (to be) + صفة

بينما الاراء التي لا تعبر عن حقيقة تستخدم

Seem + الصفة

- He seems (appears) to be polite.
- He seems taller than he is in this suit.

Mean ايه حكاية

Mean

يرمز الي | يشير الي | يدل علي | يعني | يقصد

- -His angry looks means a lot to me.
- -The word (not clean) means dirty.
- -Her wearing black clothes means she is sad.
- -when I hit you I mean that I want you study hard.

What do you mean? ماذا تقصد (تشعر بالغضب)

Mean + v-ing

يستلزم - يتطلب - يؤدي الي

- -Losing money means searching for a job.

- -Wasting time means failing in the end.

Mean (that) + جملة

- -I mean that you are brave.
- I didn't mean you must

Mean to +inf ينوي -يخطط

- -He didn't mean to kill her but it happened by mistake. (instead to)
- -Do you mean to finish the project tomorrow. (plan)

ركز في التعبيرات الاتية:

- Life means nothing to me. غير مهمة
- -My daughter means the world to me. هام جدا
- -I have never meant him any harm. لم اشعر ان اسبب ضرر له

Be supposed to +inf = be meant to +inf

- You are supposed to get up at 7 o'clock.
- You are meant to get up at 7 o'clock.

Choose the correct answer

- 1-It that children do the same with messaging
a. seems b. supposed c. meant d. pretending
- 2-I should have set the alarm clock as I was to meet my friend this morning.
a. seemed b. meant c. suppose d. pretending
- 3-Cookies areto make it easier for us to find things that interest us .
a. seems b. supposed c. meaning d. meant
- 4- I can't see this photo clearly. What is it ----- .
a) meaning to be b) seemed to be c) supposed to d) meant to be
- 5-My brother was to help me yesterday, but he was too busy chatting online .
a. mean b. supposed c. suppose d. seemed
- 6-You shouldn't have entered that room as you were not to be there .
a. seems b. supposed c. meant d. suppose
- 7- I was to see my friend Nour yesterday .but I didn't have time .
a. supposed b. seems c. meaning d. pretending
- 8-the weather to be hot tomorrow .
a. seems b. supposed c. meaning d. meant
- 9-I am to take part in a poetry competition
a. seems b. supposed c. meaning d. pretending
- 10-Nabil is to cook dinner
a. seems b.mean c. supposed d. pretend
- 11-I seem the first student to arrive at school today .
a. to be b. being c. been d. have been
- 12-It to snow last week .
a. supposed b. meant c. didn't suppose d. wasn't supposed
- 13-Maya meant you .
a. calling b. to call c. call d. calls

14-Amr seems a good day .

a. has b. have c. had d. to be having

15-The train to leave at 9 o'clock .

a. meant b. is meant c. means d. has meant

16-My teacher be happy with my work .

a. meant b. supposed c. seemed to d. meant to

17-Maher be a lot happier in his new school .

a. seemed to b. supposed c. meant d. seems

18-I really want to read this because it is to be the most exciting book . .

a. seems b. supposed c. meaning d. pretending

Suppose ايه حكاية

**1-Suppose = assume \ presume
=believe = guess = expect**

ويأتى بعدها جملة كامله

-I suppose (that) he will answer the test easily.

-I suppose she can do it.

قد تأتي في نهايه الجملة بهذا الشكل.

2- I suppose (so)

-Mona is an honest girl, I suppose.

3- Suppose + مفعول to +inf

-I suppose the train to arrive at 7 p.m

-I suppose her to come soon.

ركز اننا نستخدم ضمير مفعول

Mini test

1-He is better than his brother, I suppose. The verb suppose can be replaced by....

a-assume b-guess c- a&b

2-Sheher teacher to advise her.

a-supposes b-suppose c-suppose d-a&c

3-I suppose.....to help us.

a-they b-them c- a&b

4-I suppose.....will help us.

a-they b-them c- a&b

am, is, are supposed to +inf

من المفترض ان وهذه الصيغة تستخدم لـ

Obligation

الالتزام

arrangements

الترتيب

Common belief

اعتقاد عام

purpose \ intention

الغرض \ النية

1-This school is supposed to be the best one "common belief"

اقصد ان هذه المدرسة كل الناس تعرف ان افضل مدرسه.

2-You are supposed to look after this patient, doctor Samy (obligation)

3-The mobile is supposed to be used for making and receiving calls. (purpose)

4-I'm supposed to get up tomorrow (arrangements).

5-You are supposed to study hard.(advice)

صيغه الماضي

Was \ were supposed to + inf

كان من المفترض ان

-He was supposed to arrive home early.

كان من المفترض ان يصل الي البيت مبكرا
اي انه لم يصل الي البيت مبكرا.

You were supposed to help your brother.

اي انه لم يساعد والده

Mini test

1-He is supposed....me from school.

a-take

b-to take

c-taking

2-he was.....to leave yesterday.

a-suppose

b-supposing

c-supposed

3-You are supposed to arrive at work on time. This is

a-purpose

b-obligation

c-intention

4-He was supposed to finish the project last week, it means heit

a-finished

b-didn't finish

c-may finish

5-He wasn't supposed to insult his father, it means he.....his father.

a-should insult

b-shouldn't insult

c-shouldn't have insulted

6-You are.....to go there soon.

a-suppose

b-supposing

c-supposed

7-One of the team.....to attend the programme.

a-suppose

b-is supposed

c-are supposed

passive

لا تنسى صيغه الـ

Am \ is \ are \ was \ were supposed to be + p.p

-A ticket is supposed to (book- booked) now.

-A break is supposed.....after hard work.

a-to take

b-to be taken

c-to be taking

تذكر الصيغة الاتية لتدل على الاستمرار

Am \ is \ are \ was \ were supposed to be +ing

-He is supposed to be studying now.

من المفترض انه يكون يذاكر الان

-they are supposed to be coming from school now.

انه من المفترض انهم قادمين من المدرسه الان

1-All the team is supposedready for the match.

a-be b-to be c-being

2-Both Alaa and Asmaa.....supposed to come to our party yesterday.

a-am b-are c-were

3-he has worked hard and he is supposed.....a rest now.

a-be taken b-take c-to be taking

4-Our luggage.....supposed to arrive now.

a-is b-are c-has

لا تنسى الصيغة القادمة

Was \ were supposed to have + p.p
Was \ were supposed to have been +p.p

عندما نتحدث عن شيء كان مفترض اتمامه في الماضي

-Samy (is- was) supposed to have done the homework.

-When the husband got home, his wife.....supposed to be preparing lunch.

a-is b-was c-has been

ملاحظات ظريفه للطلبة اللطيفه

يمكن استخدام

Suppose (that) supposing (that) + ماضي بسيط

لتحل محل 2 If

-Suppose that you were tired, what would you do.

-Supposing he came late, would you meet him?

1-Supposingyou last the match, how would you behave.

a-that b-no word c-a&b

الحال

Supposed supposedly

من المفترض وتأتي في بدايه او نهايه الجمله

Supposedly, he is the best student.

Exercise on Grammar**1-Choose the correct answer:**

1-You.....to check the car engine.

(meant – are meant – meaning – will mean)

2-This play seems.....boring.

(to be – being – been – has been)

3-That wasn'tto happen.

(seemed – seem – suppose – supposed)

4-I'm sorry I didn't.....to anger you.

(mean – suppose – seem – wants)

5-How.....supposed to know you were waiting for me?

(had I – I had – was I – I was)

6-What does this word.....? – Delicious.

(seem – suppose – mean – be meant)

7-I haven't seen it myself, but it's supposed.....a great film.

(being – been – to be – have been)

8-This combination of qualities.....generally supposed to be extremely rare.

(has – is – were – have)

9-You're not.....to walk on the grass.

(seem – mean – supposed – accused)

10-Noha didn't.....very pleased when I met her.

(mean – seem – suppose – want)

11-Everyone seemed.....ready, so we set off.

(to be – be – to being – being)

12-I was.....to arrive at 8:00, but I arrived later.

(seemed – meant – suppose – supposing)

13-My brother seems.....yesterday's meeting.

(attend – to attend – to be attending – to have attended)

14-The meeting.....take place on Wednesday, but we've had to postpone it.

(is supposed to – is supposing to – are seemed to – meant to)

15-You.....supposed to be here. Go to your office now.

(don't – aren't – wasn't – didn't)

16-Ramy is supposed.....dinner.

(to cook – cook – to be cooked – to cooking)

17-It.....to snow last week.

(didn't suppose – wasn't supposed – isn't meant – wasn't seemed)

18-Karim.....a good day.

(seems to have – seems be having – seem to have – seems to be)

19-The train meant.....at 10 o'clock.

(leave – to leave – to leaving – have left)

20-The teacher.....to be happy with my work.

(meant – supposed – seemed – was seeming)

21-What.....to do this week?

(you are meant – are you supposed – are you seemed – did you suppose)

22-What is the weather.....like tomorrow?

(meant to be – meant to – seem to be – supposed to be)

23-Adverts are.....honest, but we must be careful.

(meant to be – meant to – seem to be – supposed be)

24-Hoda.....upset today. I don't know why.

(seems – seemed – is seeming – is seemed)

25-He seems.....after losing his mobile.

(anger – angrily – angry – angers)

26-She seems.....

(friend – friends – friendly – friendship)

27-It seems.....the shop will have to close down. They can't find a buyer for it.

(that – if – though – no word)

28-It seemed as.....time was standing still. I wanted that moment to last forever.

(through – though – like – that)

29-It seemed.....she didn't like the food.

(like – as – to – if)

30-It seemedeveryone that the police were ready to secure the event.

(like – to – as if – as though)

31-It seems to.....as though she needs help.

(I – my – me – myself)

32-Ramy seems.....busy.

(being – to being – be – to be)

33-I don't like that man. He.....friendly at all.

(seems – doesn't seem – never seem – seem not)

34-There seemed...no reason why she shouldn't come with us, so we all travelled together.

(that – to be – as if – as though)

35-Don't talk loudly. The baby seems.....in the next room.

(sleeping – to asleep – to be sleep – to be sleeping)

36-“That rising sun meant that the weather would be warm.” In this sentence the verb “meant” can be replace by.....

(planned – indicated – supposed – had to)

37-The verb “to suppose”..... “to assume”.

(means – is meaning – was meaning – is meant)

38-“For most people, Paris means fashion and beauty.” In this sentence, the verb “means” can be replaced by.....

(plans – presents – summarizes – symbolizes)

39-He meant.....Samy to be in charge.

(by – to – with – for)

40-I meant Mona.....the job. I really recommend her.

(take – to take – taking – to taking)

41-There seemed.....little difference between the two alternatives.

(no word – to be – as tough – as if)

Unit 6

learning from your mistakes

| | | | |
|---------------|-----------------|--------------|-------------|
| fog | ضباب | dream | حلم |
| foggy | كثير الضباب | care about | يهتم بـ |
| mean | بخيل - يعني | mistakes | أخطاء |
| fire | نار - يفصل | treat | يتعامل |
| beg | يتوسل | shout out | يصيح |
| pile | ركام | businessman | رجل أعمال |
| sigh | يتنهد | business | عمل |
| nephew | ابن اخ | philosopher | فيلسوف |
| smile | يبتسم - ابتسامة | Hard hearted | قاسي |
| tone | نغمة | gift | هبة |
| boss | رئيس | pay | يدفع - راتب |
| Christmas | عيد الميلاد | mind | عقل - يمانع |
| carol | ترنيمة | Bring back | يذكر |
| character | شخصية | assistant | مساعد |
| friendship | صداقة | ignore | يتجاهل |
| massive | ضخم | butcher | جزار |
| enormous | ضخم | waste | يضيع |
| poverty | الفقر | invite | يدعو |
| sun cream | كريم شمس | logical | منطقي |
| reply | يرد | plenty of | كثيرا من |
| chat | يتسامر | lightning | البرق |
| prompt | عاجل | forgive | يسامح |
| surprised | مدهش | hut | كوخ |
| narrative | سرد قصصي | caption | تعليق |
| pool | حمام | straw | قش |
| disappointed | محبط | rise | ينهض |
| interested in | مهتم بـ | torch | شعلة |
| regret | يندم | mice | فئران |
| generous | كريم | a fool | أحمق |
| pick up | يلتقط | polite | مؤدب |

Definitions

| | | |
|-------------|-------------|---|
| sigh | ينهد | A deep breath out that shows you are tired, sad or disappointed |
| mean | بخيل | Not happy to spend money or give anything |
| pile | كومه / ركام | A group of things put on top of each other. |

| | | |
|---------------------------|-----------------------------|---|
| beg | يتوسل / يشحت | To ask for something in a way that shows you need it very much. |
| bring back | يستعيد / يذكر | Make you remember |
| fall out | ينهي صداقته ب | Stop being friendly |
| get into | يبدأ الاستمتاع / الاهتمام ب | Start enjoying |
| get on with | يصادق شخص | Be friendly with |
| hang out with | يقضي وقت مع | Spend time with |
| keep in touch with | يبقي علي اتصال مع | Continue to communicate with |
| lose touch with | يفقد الاتصال مع | Stop communicating with |

Synonyms

| | | |
|----------------------------|-----------|------------------------------|
| a bit | قليلا | a little/slightly |
| abridged | مختصر | summarized |
| beg | طلب / سال | ask/inquire/request |
| cold | بارد | chilly/freezing/snowy |
| enormous | ضخم | huge/massive |
| far away | بعيد | remote |
| foggy | ضبابي | hazy/misty |
| friendly | ودود | lovely |
| mean | بخيل | stingy |
| pile | كومه | bunch/mass/collection |
| sigh | يتنهد | sob/moan |
| suddenly | فجاء | unexpectedly/out of the blue |
| wishes | امنيات | hopes |
| lonely- isolated/ unwanted | وحيد | alone |
| seemingly | من الواضح | apparently |
| frustrated | محبط | disappeared |
| reasoned | منطقي | logical |
| pay no attention to | يتجاهل | ignore |

Antonyms

| | | | |
|--------------|--------|---------------------|------------|
| alone | وحيد | loved | محبوب |
| disappointed | محبط | pleased – satisfied | سعيد |
| foggy | ضباب | clear | واضح |
| friendly | ودود | unfriendly | غير ودود |
| honest | امين | dishonest | غير امين |
| ignore | يتجاهل | pay attention to | ينتبه ل |
| mean | بخيل | generous | كريم |
| mean | قاسي | kind | طيب – عطوف |
| a bit | قليلا | much | كثيرا |

| | | | |
|----------|----------|-------------|------------|
| abridged | مختصر | detailed | مفصل |
| beg | طلب/ سال | give/donate | اعطي/ تبرع |
| cold | بارد | hot/warm | حار/ دافئ |
| enormous | ضخم | tiny | ضئيل |
| far away | بعيد | near/close | قريب |
| pile | كومه | few/little | قليل |
| suddenly | فجاء | expectedly | متوقع |
| wishes | امنيات | regrets | ندم / اسف |

Prepositions

| | | | |
|--------------------------|-------------------------|--------------------|--------------------------|
| get on with | يصادق | fall out with | ينهي صداقته ب |
| hang out with | يقضي وقت مع | spend no time with | لا يقضي وقت مع |
| keep in touch with | يبقي علي اتصال | lose touch with | يفقد الاتصال ب |
| stop being interested in | يفقد الاهتمام ب | get into | يهتم ب |
| upload | يرفع ملفات علي الانترنت | download | يحمل الملفات من الانترنت |
| argue with | يتجادل مع | run off | ينطلق |
| argue against | يهاجم | according to | وفقا ل |
| work for | يعمل لحساب | work against | يعمل ضد |
| pick up | يتناول - يلتقط | care about | يهتم ب |

Expressions

| | | | |
|-----------------------|--------------------------|----------------------|-----------------------|
| A deep breath out | نفس عميق | international friend | اصدقاء من مختلف الدول |
| Bah | اسلوب للاعتراض | invite someone to | يدعو شخصا ل |
| Be happy about | سعيد ب | learn from | يتعلم من |
| See mistakes | يري الاخطاء | let someone go home | يترك شخصا لبيته |
| Care so much about | يولي اهتمام كبير | make friends | يكون صداقات |
| Change his mind | يغير رايه | mean a lot to | تعني الكثير ل |
| Come into | دخل / جاء | pay/ keep attention | يلفت- يجذب الانتباه |
| Compare with | يقارن ب | pay for | يدفع الثمن |
| Feel alone | يشعر بالوحده | pick up | يلتقط |
| Feel ignored | يشعر بالتجاهل | shout out of | ينادي من خارج |
| Feel sorry about | يشعر بالاسف تجاه | spend money on | ينفق مالا علي |
| Fire (someone) | يطرد شخص من العمل | the end of | نهايه |
| Fire the gun at | يطلق النار علي | treat people badly | يعامل الناس بشكل سيء |
| Get lost | يتوهه | very far away | بعيدا جدا |
| Get worse | يشعر بالسوء | wake up in bed | يستيقظ من فراشه |
| Give feedback | يعطي تغذيه راجعه/ رد فعل | waste his time | يهدر وقته |
| In an unfriendly tone | بنبرة صوت غير ودوده | go on a picnic | يذهب في نزهه |
| In contact with | علي اتصال ب | work in an office | يعمل في مكتب |
| In the middle of | في منتصف | work with | يعمل مع شخص |
| Have a dream | يحلم | change his mind | يغير رايه |
| Have a relationship | يكون علي علاقه مع | make friends | يصادق |
| Have a cold | يعاني من برد | fire a gun at | يصوب نحو |

Have a conversation

يتحاول

take an interest in

يهتم بـ

Language notes

Get

Get on with

Get on with

Get on (with)

ينسجم مع يكون علي علاقة جيده بـ
يستمر في القيام بـ
يتأقلم مع

- You must get (on- off) with your colleagues at school.
- you shouldn't despair, you should get (off- on) with your new project.
- After two weeks in the factory, he could get (off- on) at work.

Fall

Fall out with

Fall out

Fall off

Fall from

يتشاجر مع شخص

يسقط

يسقط من علي شئ ليس منه

يسقط من علي شئ منه

- you should fall (from- out) with people.
- The apple fell (out- from) the tree.
- The boy fell (out-off) the bike.
- I fear that all my hair falls (off – out)

Hang

Hang, hanged, hanged

Hang, hung, hug

Hang out with

يشنق

يعلق

يقضي وقت طويل مع b

- He will hang out (by- with) his wife far from his children.
- I will (hang- bang) my clothes on the trail.
- they (hung- hang- hanged) him yesterday as he was guilty of murder.

Spend no time with

لا يقضي وقت مع

- He is busy, he spends no time (by- with) us.

Get

Get into \ in + مكان

يدخل مكان

Get in يدخل

Get into

يألف- يبدأ الاستمتاع بـ

Stop being interested in

- It's difficult get (at- into) these friends, they have different tendency.

Bring**Bring.....back**

يذكر - يعيد ذكري - يستعيد

-I want to bring back my old car seeing one of my old friends bring back a lot of memories.

Fire**Fire** مدفأ**Fire** نار حريق**be on fire** يحترق**The fire breaks out** تشعل النار**The fire goes out** تنطفئ النار**Start a fire** يبدأ حريق**Make a fire** يشعل النار**Set fire to** يشعل النار في = seton fire**Fire** يطرد من العملAll of us sat by (fear- **fire**)The office was (in - **on**) fire but we could control it.You must keep to rules or I'll (fear - **fire**) you.-He decided to (**set**- make) fire to the house.-The fire broke (into- **out**) suddenly.-The fire went (off- **out**) quickly.

Reading & listening

A Christmas Carol

It was the end of December, it was dark outside and the streets were **foggy**. Scrooge was a very rich businessman, but he was **mean** and people didn't like him. Scrooge was working in his office with his **assistant**, Bob Cratchit. He was very cold because Scrooge wouldn't **pay for** a big fire to keep them warm.

There was only a small fire and it was very **far away**. It's late. Can I go home, Mr Scrooge? Bob **begged**. Have you finished your work? Asked Scrooge.

Bob looked at the enormous pile of work left to do and **sighed**.

"You can't go home if you don't finish your work, continued Scrooge.

If I finish all this work tonight, will you let me come to work a bit later tomorrow morning? asked Bob. No, said Scrooge. Suddenly the door opened and Scrooge's nephew, Fred, **came into** the office. He gave his uncle a **friendly** smile.

Bah! Said Scrooge, why are you here? And why are you so happy? You're poor. What have you got to be **happy about**? If you are so rich, why are you so sad? Replied Fred. Perhaps if you were poor like me, **you'd** be happy like me, too. Have you come to ask me for money? Asked Scrooge in an **unfriendly** tone. No, replied his nephew. I've come to invite you to dinner. Bah! Said his uncle.

A Christmas Carol: After a dream

The next morning, Scrooge woke up in his bed. He'd had a **terrible dream**, but now he could **see his mistakes**. If he hadn't felt so **alone**. He wouldn't have **cared** only **about** money. And if he hadn't cared about money so much, he would have treated other people better. Then he would have had more friends, and he wouldn't **have felt** so alone. But now he would change. He ran to his window and saw a boy in the street. You! Boy! He

shouted out of the window. Do you know the butcher's shop? Yes, Mr Scrooge, shouted the boy. He was surprised to see Mr Scrooge smile.

I want you to buy the best food and take it to Bob Cratchit's house as a **gift** from me to his family. Will you do this for me if I pay you? "Of course". Said the boy and then he **ran off** before Mr Scrooge **changed his mind**. Scrooge went out in the street and said. "Good morning", to all the people he met and he **smiled at** them. Everyone was surprised to **see** Mr. Scrooge **smiling**, but they replied, "Good morning. Mr Scrooge. And that made Scrooge very happy. Then he went to his nephew's house and asked if he could have dinner with him. Of course, his nephew smiled and invited him to come inside.

How are your friendships?

Have you ever met a friend to spend time with them and, in the middle of a conversation . When you're talking , they start looking at their phone? When that happens, many people feel **ignored** and **upset** and the problem may be **getting worse** because over 81% of Egyptian **teenagers** between the ages of 15 and 17 now **own** a phone. **Studies** have shown that just having a mobile phone out while having a conversation makes friends **feel uncomfortable** with each other. And many people think that when someone is using their phone, they are not being **polite** and not **really** listening. So, using a **phone** like this can damage even good friendship. However, there are ways to have a phone without **losing** your friends. **Understanding** the problem is important. So, the next time you are going to **pick up** your phone while talking to a friend, **think about** what you are doing and stop. Is your phone really more **important** than your friend? Perhaps you should **keep** your **attention on** the person you are talking to. And if a friend ignores you, tell them about it because they may not understand how it **makes** you **feel**.

Listening

Presenter:

In today's show, we're going back in time and looking at some of our **regrets**. Now I've got a message from Tarek. And Tarek has a story that , I think, will **bring back memories** for many of us. This is what he says.... I **used to talk** to my family and play with my brothers after school. I also **used to** phone my grandparents and my cousins. But then I **got into using** social media more. I started **using** social media to talk to my friends after school **too**, we all liked the same things. It was fun and we all **got on with each other**. Something **I'd hang** out with them online for hours **chatting**. I **guess** I lost **touch with** my cousins and my **grandparents** a bit. I still saw them sometimes, of course, but I **didn't** call them. I didn't tell my grandparents **about** my day at school. But when my friends **started falling out with** each other online, I stopped chatting with them, too. Now, I'm sorry. I **shouldn't have ignored** my family. **I wish I'd kept in touch with my cousins** more. **I should have called my grandparents**, and I wish I **could change** what happened. Sadly, this kind of thing seems to happen so often these days. I guess, when we're **getting into** something new, we can forget to take an interest in the people who really care us. Thank you for sharing your story with us, Tarek.

Prep school memories

Hoda: Hey Lamia! Have you seen this from Ola? She's posted some old photos when we were in prep school.

Lamia: Really? Let's see. But, I don't remember an Ola in our class.

Hoda: Yes, you do. She used to sit opposite you in class and you would always fall out when we played any game together because you both wanted to be the leaders.

Lamia: Ahhh, yes I remember now. I shouldn't have argued with her so much because she was a kind person really.

Hoda: Look. Here she is in the photo.

Lamia: Ahh, wow!

Hoda:and look at us! Oh no way! Just look at your hair!

Lamia: Oh, that's terrible! And what about your dress!

Hoda: Oh! No! Not that dress! It brings back so many bad memories. That was the dress I was wearing when I lost my favourite necklace. I wish I hadn't taken it to school that day.

Lamia: But the necklace was very pretty and if you hadn't take it to school, Smaira wouldn't have spoken to you about it and you two wouldn't have got on so well!

Hoda: That's true I guess, and we are still very good friends now.

Lamia: And look! There's the old group of friends we used to hang out with. I was sad when they moved away to go to high school and really wish we hadn't lost touch with them.

Hoda: Yes, we had some great times together and if we had stayed in touch, we would have been able to organize a school reunion. I wish we hadn't left prep school! We had a lot less homework!

Lamia: That's true! Perhaps we can keep in touch with them on social media.

Hoda: Good idea! Let's post a message asking if anyone knows anything about them.

Judy

Judy: Huda was my best friend. We'd always hang out together at school. We made each other laugh a lot and we were very close. Sometimes, we'd hang out together after school as well. We'd listen to music, look at magazines and chat for hours. One weekend, we went shopping at the mall. We had a great time as usual, but that was when she showed me her new smartphone. Apparently, it was a really good phone and Huda couldn't stop using it all the time. She got really into social media and made lots of new friends online.

Video script:

Charles Dickens was born in England in 1812. He wrote fifteen novels including Great Expectation, Oliver Twist, David Copperfield, and Hard Times. His most popular novel is probably A Christmas Carol, which was published in 1843.

In A Christmas Carol, Dickens wrote about some of the problems in Britain at that time . Many people were very poor and Dickens thought that the rich people should be kinder and help the poor people who worked for them.

The main character is Ebenezer scrooge. At the beginning of the story, he is mean and he won't help anyone, including his employee , Bob cratchit, who is very poor with a large family and a sick child.

However , by the end of the story scrooge has changed and he sees life in a completely different way . we are told that scrooge: Became as a good a friend , as good an employer and as good a man as the good old city of London had ever seen.

Exercises on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer:

- 1-The children.....their father to take them to the cinema, but he said no.
(ordered – begged – attacked – let)
- 2-The police.....two shots at the criminals before they were arrested.
(breathed – designed – warmed – fired)
- 3-The employee was busy behind a.....of paper on his desk.
(file – Nile – pile – mile)
- 4-The businessman.....deeply at the thought of losing his money.
(cheered – sighed – laughed – yelled)
- 5-The old factory owner has always been....with money, so his employees don't like him.
(cheerful – generous – careless – mean)
- 6-I spent two years working.....a book about children.
(with – on – for – as)
- 7-Some teachers let students.....a quiz before starting the lesson.
(do – to do – does – doing)
- 8-My elder brother works.....an engineer in a famous factory.
(with – on – as – at)
- 9-The young man doesn't know what he really wants in.....
(life – a life – the life – lives)
- 10-It can take about one month for a broken arm to.....
(heal – treat – cure – spread)
- 11-I felt.....when my team lost the final match.
(disappointed – appointed – pleased – acquainted)
- 12-The relationship between workers and.....should be good in order to achieve profits.
(customers – buyers – employers – clients)

- 13-Why are you being so.....to me? I hope you treat me better.
(meaning – main – mean – means)
- 14-I found the letter in a.....of documents on his desk.
(peel – pile – bill – pull)
- 15-What do you.....by saying we are disturbing you?
(main – mean – mail – mill)
- 16-They both threatened to.....all the careless workers.
(reward – fire – award – relieve)
- 17-We are looking for people who would be willing to.....in the group's work.
(asset – assist – assume – desert)
- 18-Come here.me check your pulse.
(Force – Cause – Allow – Let)
- 19-Can I come to work.....later tomorrow morning?
(a bit – more – pity – bitter)
- 20-Our boss usually treats us.....
(friendly – friendliness – friendlier – in a friendly way)
- 21-I.....a bad dream last night.
(had – went – gave – paid)
- 22-The so many friends you have.....prove that you are sociable.
(needed – paid – made – fired)
- 23-You need to.....enough attention to your education.
(pay – miss – fail – had)
- 24-The donations.....will be spent on the poor children.
(needed – missed – done – fired)
- 25-He usually.....his mistakes when he calms down.
(makes – goes – sees – gets)
- 26-I got up late, so Ithe school bus.
(paid – missed – felt – had)
- 27-He is.....with his money. The poor like him very much.
(generous – sick – warm – unfriendly)
- 28-When mum didn't find out that I had broken the vase, Iin relief.
(sighed – meant – fired – piled)
- 29-He doesn't have any friends here. That's why he feels so.....
(apparently – alone – sadly – completely)
- 30-His.....as a teacher makes him very successful. He has a natural ability to teach children easily.
(reunion – tone – gift – regret)

- 31-It is.....that a child makes mistakes.
(main – logical – disappointed – foggy)
- 32-Charities depend mainly on.....from people.
(attacks – memories – relationship – donations)
- 33-It is very dangerous to drive fast on aroad.
(main – logical – disappointed – foggy)
- 34-Your.....is no use. Forget about your past failure and get ready for a new start.
(reunion – tone – gift – regret)
- 35-My father took us all to the park,my baby sister.
(including – inviting – firing – extracting)
- 36-....., she refused our help. We knew she needed it badly.
(Luckily – Alone – Sadly – Completely)
- 37-The housing problem is the.....interest of the government this year.
(main – lonely – disappointed – foggy)
- 38-We.....to tell you that you haven't been selected for the position.
(regret – sorry – upset – remind)
- 39-The young man whom I employed as my.....works very hard.
(king – editor – assistant – patron)
- 40-My sister's son is my.....and I am his uncle.
(cousin – niece – nephew – brother)
- 41-Employers have an obligation to.....all the employees equally.
(cure – beat – treat – operate)
- 42-People are advised not to give money to.....because most of them are taking it as a profession instead of looking for a job.
(burglars – beggars – nephews – tones)
- 43-We should teach our children to learn from their.....
(rights – corrections – mistakes – behaviours)
- 44-There is a running.....taking place these days. Are you in?
(match – path – race – passage)
- 45-My father asked me not to.....my money on that unhealthy food.
(benefit – waste – keep – save)
- 46-Teachers have been using visual aids such as.....and pictures in the classroom for a long time.
(screens – chalks – maps – laps)
- 47-In squash, you have to beat the player you are playing.....
(lonely – private – alone – particular)
- 48-The church choir is rehearsing some.....to be sung at Christmas Eve.
(films – games – stations – carols)

If

If

If = in case = provided = provided that , بشرط , فى حالة

☞ If you are careful , I will give you my car (in case)

→ In case you are careful , I will give you my car

If = With , by , in case of + v - ing

- (In case – **In case of**) playing well, we will win.
- (In – **In case of**) the rain, we won't go out.
- If we study hard, we will succeed. (**By**)
- **By** studying hard, we will succeed.

If + not = unless = except if إذا لم

- (Unless – **If**) he doesn't get up early , he will miss the bus .

مركز : Unless لابد أن تأتي بعدها إثبات أى إذا وجدنا نفى نختار If وإذا وجدنا إثبات فإن المعنى هو الفارق مثل

- (If – **Unless**) he is careful , he will make a mistake .
- (**If** – Unless) he is careful , he won't make a mistake .

Unless = without / bufor + v ----ing / n

- (**without** – unless) planning well , the country will not make progress .
- (Without – **In case of**) studying well , you will pass the exam .

If it weren't for/without + v ----ing / n → would + inf.

If it hadn't been for/without + v ---ing / n → would have + p.p.

- If it hadn't been for Ali , we wouldn't (solve / **have solved**) the problem .
- If it (hadn't been – **weren't**) for Mona , we would stay at home

- ☒ **If + جملة = with – by – in case of + v – ing / n** فى حالة
- ☒ **Unless + جملة = without , But for + v-ing / n** بدون / لولا

- (**If** – Unless) he is intelligent , he will solve the problem .
- (If – **In case of**) coming early , I'll let him in .
- (In case of – **without**) blood banks , a lot of people would die .

If zero مضارع بسيط → مضارع بسيط

• عندما نتحدث عن حقائق علمية خاصة بالطبيعة أو حقائق ثابتة " عادات "

- If we (**heat** – heated) iron , it expands .
يمكن أن يكون مبنى للمجهول . If water (heats – **is heated**) , it turns into vapour .
- If the tree (**is** – was) deciduous , it loses its leaves .
- If the bark of the tree is destroyed , the tree (**dies** – would die)
- If there is not much rain in a year, the rings in a tree were close together . (**are**)
- If you'll mix red and white , you get pink . (**mix**)

Water evaporates if (heated – is heated)

الأولى

If

الثانية

If مضارع بسيط → will , can , may/must , have to , has to +inf
 If مضارع بسيط → should / might -would rather 'd better+ inf .
 If مضارع بسيط → اقتراح – أمر It's + adj.

• وتعتبر الحالة الأولى لـ If عن احتمال / تنبؤ أو توقع مستقبلي .

- If you study hard , you (will – would) pass the exam .
- If he (plays – played) well , he will win .
- If he comes early tomorrow , I (would – will) receive him .
- If he invites you , (will you – you will) go ?
- What (will you – you will) do if he comes now ?
- If she (comes – came) , please , go out .
- If you pick those apples now , they (don't – won't) taste very sweet .
- If this tree has deep roots , it (doesn't – won't) fall over in strong winds .
- If you (looked – look) at the sun , you will damage your sight .
- If there were clouds in the sky tonight , you will not be able to see the moon.(are)
- If you watched the sky on a clear night , you can see stars and planets.(watch)
- If it's warm and sunny tomorrow , I (will – would) go swimming .

If1 أي مضارع / مضارع بسيط will + inf

- If you (are – were) wearing glasses, you will protect your eyes.

و تدل الحالة الأولى على التنبؤ – الوعد – التهديد – النصح – الأمر – الأذن

- If you are ill, you (can – should) see a doctor .
- If you feel tired, you (can – may – must – will) go home .

ملاحظات

1- يمكن أن نستخدم (When) بدلا من (If) في الحالة الصفرية.

- If / When I feel tired, I go to bed early.
- When it is warm, I go for a walk every day.
- Where do you go if / when you are on holiday?

2- الروابط الآتية تستخدم بدلا من (If) في الحالة الأولى. و يجوز الحالات الأخرى

Provided that / On condition that / Providing / As long as / So long as

- You can borrow my pen **if / provided that / on condition that / as long as** you give it back.
- Provided that If you send your order by fax, we will deliver the goods immediately.
- As long as you invite me for lunch, I will help you with your homework.

3- تُحذف (If) في الحالة الأولى و نبدأ بالفعل (**Should**).

- **If** he **has** enough time, he will watch the football match.
- **Should** he **have** enough time, he will watch the football match.

4- يمكن أن نستخدم (و إلا **and / or / or else / otherwise**) بدلا من (If) في الحالة الأولى.

- You've got to start studying, **or else** you'll fail all those exams.
- We'd better send it by express mail, **otherwise** it'll take days.

5- يمكن أن نستخدم (تحسبا لـ **in case**) بدلا من (If) في الحالة الأولى لتعير عما ينبغي أن نفعله لنستعد لموقف محتمل في المستقبل.

- I'll draw a map for you **in case** you can't find our house.
- I don't want to go out tonight **in case** my friend phones.
- Shall I keep some chicken salad for your brother **in case** he's hungry when he gets here?
- In case I forget later, here are the keys to the garage.

- لاحظ الفارق في المعنى بين (**in case** — تحسباً لـ) و (**If**) في الأمثلة التالية .

- Let's take our swimsuits **in case** there's a pool at the hotel.

(We don't know if there is a pool there.)

- Let's take our swimsuits **if** there's a pool in the hotel.

(We will wait until we know about the pool before we decide.)

جمل محلولة للمتفوقين غلسة خالص

- 1- if you drive dangerously fast , youan accident
a- can have b- have c) have had d) are having
- 2- it is fact that oneif one has nothing to do
a) bore b) will bore c) is bored d) would bore
- 3- If you have a credit card , youthings online
a) are buying b) buy c) can buy d) will buy
- 4- I'm never late for school , if any is ever late , theythem
a) punish b) will punish c) punishes d) are punished
- 5- Hehis mind if you insist on it
a) might change b) will have changed c) changes d) is changed
- 6- If he dies , ita great loss
a) is b) will be c) was d) causes
- 7- When a great person dies , ita great loss to his country
a) is b) will be c) was d) has been
- 8- If you plant a tree , itthe world to breathe
a) help b) helps c) will help d) would help
- 9- If you plant a tree , itlovely in a few years
a) look b) looks c) will look d) would look
- 10 – if you practise a sport , youin the sports team
a) are getting b) will get c) get d) would get
- 10 – if you practise a sport , youbetter at it
a) are getting b) will get c) get d) would get

فرفش مع التمرين الآتي :

- 1- If you pour hot water onto ice , it
a) would melt b) melts c) is melts d) will melt
- 2- If youlisten , you won't learn anything .
a) don't b) won't c) didn't d) wouldn't
- 3- My parents are very happy if Imy exams .
a) pass b) will pass c) passed d) would pass
- 4- If I need money , my fatherme .
a) gives b) would give c) gave d) has given
- 5- If hehard , he will succeed .
a) studied b) will study c) studies d) would study
- 6- If Ito keep fit , I go to the gym .
a) need b) will need c) needs d) needed
- 7- Whatdo if you meet Samy tomorrow ?
a) will you b) you will c) would you d) you would

- 8- If the bark of a tree is badly damaged, the tree
 a) 'll die b) had died c) died d) dies
- 9- If a tree has deep roots, it over in strong winds.
 a) will fall b) falls c) won't fall d) don't fall
- 10- If water freezes, it into ice.
 a) 'll turn b) turns c) turned d) 'd turn
- 11- If water is heated to 100C, it
 a) boiling b) will boil c) boils d) is boiled
- 12- If Hassan the competition, he'll win.
 a) had entered b) enters c) entered d) 'll enter
- 13- If it is a dry year, the rings narrower.
 a) are b) were c) 'll be d) had been
- 14- If scientists study the rings of trees, they ...out information about our climate in the past.
 a) finds b) found c) can find d) finding
- 15- Metals if they are heated.
 a) will expand b) expand c) would expand d) are expanded
- 16-water evaporate if it is heated?
 a) Does b) Will c) Would d) Did

الثاني

الحال

If ماضى بسيط → would , might , could + inf.

ملحوظة : يمكن استخدام might + inf في الحالة الأولى أو الثانية و الثانية أفضل .

- If I played well , I (will – would) win .
- If he (has – had) money , he would lend me some .
- (Would you – You would) go if he invited you ?
- If he (studied – studies) hard , he would succeed .
- If I (am – were) rich , I would help the poor .
- تستخدم were بدلاً من was تعبيراً عن الاستحالة .
- If I (am – were) a bird , I would fly .

بداءً If

If & were

• إذا كان في الجملة were فإننا نقوم بحركة المقص :

- If I were rich , I would help the needy . □
 - Were I rich , I would help the needy .
- If I played well , I would win . (were)
- Were حالة عدم وجود were في الجملة الأساسية to + inf فاعل Were
- Were I to play well , I would win .

Were فاعل + to+inf / صفة - ضمير اسم ————— would + inf

Were I Ali , I will see the doctor . (would)

- (Were – If) I to study hard , I would pass the exam .

If / Had: ولا تحل محل if إلا إذا كانت فعل أساسى مثل

- If I had a car , I would lend it to you .
 Had I a car , I would lend it to you .

• **Had + فاعل + اسم** **would + inf.**

- (Had – were) I money , I would lend you some .
- (Were – Had) I a doctor , I would help you .

If & should **وهو بديل If الحالة الأولى والثانية**

Should + فاعل \longrightarrow **+inf** \longrightarrow **Would/will + inf**

- Should I play , I (will win – would have won) the match .
- Should I play , I (would win – will have won) the match .
- (Should – Could) I make a plan , I will carry it out .

• وتدل الحالة الثانية على (1) النصيحة . (2) الاستحالة (3) عكس الواقع

- If I am you, I would see the doctor " were "
- If I (was – were) a bird, I would fly . استحالة
- If I (was – were) rich, I would help the poor . عكس الواقع ويمكن هنا was أيضا .
- - يمكن أن نستخدم (**Suppose / Supposing (that) / Imagine (that)**) بدلا من (**If**) في الحالة الثانية .
- - **Suppose / Supposing / Imagine (that)** you found a job in Cairo, what would you do?

If

الثانية

الحالة

If ماضى تام \longrightarrow **would have + p.p.**

- If he had played well , he would (win – have won)
- If he (had – had had) money , he would have built a charity .
- If he (worked – had worked) hard , he would have earned money .
- If he (earned – had earned) money , he would have a villa .

ل

If

If & Had

بداء

- وتكون بحركة المقصص :

- If I had done the homework , my teacher would have been happy .
Had I done the homework , my teacher would have been happy .
- كيف نفرق بين **had** في الحالة الثانية أو الثالثة :

○ **Had + فاعل + اسم (n)** \longrightarrow **would + inf .**

○ **Had + فاعل + p.p.** \longrightarrow **would have + p.p.**

- Had I money , I would (buy – have bought) a car .
- Had I played well , I would (win – have won)

○ **If it weren't for + v-ing / n** \longrightarrow **would + inf** **لولا**

○ **If it hadn't been for + v-ing / n** \longrightarrow **would have + p.p** **لولا**

- If it weren't for Ali , we wouldn't (solve – haven't solved) the problem .
 - If it (weren't – hadn't) been for his intelligence , he couldn't have solved the problem .
- و تدل الحالة الثالثة على عكس الواقع في الماضي .

If he played well yesterday, he would have won.

" had played "

في مختصر

| | | | | |
|------|--------------|------------------|---|--------|
| If 1 | مضارع بسيط , | will + inf | → | مستقبل |
| If 2 | ماضي بسيط , | would + inf | → | مضارع |
| If 3 | ماضي تام , | would have + inf | → | ماضي |

- If he comes early tomorrow, I would receive him. (will)
- If he is with us now, I would apologize to him. (were)
- If he studied well last year, he would have passed. (had studied)

ماذا أختار بعد but

| | |
|------|--------------------------------|
| If 1 | but + won't / can't |
| If 2 | but + can't / don't / (be) not |
| If 3 | but + didn't + inf |

- If I were a doctor, I would help the poor but I (didn't – won't – am not)
- If I had gone there, I would have met him but I (hadn't – can't – didn't)

إذا كان فعل الشرط منفي فإن الفعل بعد but مثبت والعكس

- If I had not gone to Alex , I would have met him but I (hadn't – can't – did) = went
في الاختبار لا تضع الكلمة الدالة في الاعتبار في المقام الأول إنما توافق الأفعال.
- If he (came – comes – had come) early tomorrow, I would receive him.
- If it (rains – rained), I won't go out today.

و لكن الدقة قد تأتي في الشواذ و هو دمج حالتين مع بعض مثل :-

- If I had put a plan for the project, it would become successful now.

أي لو أنه وضع الخطة في الماضي لنجح المشروع الآن .

- If he had won the prize last month, he would be rich now .

أي لو أنه فاز بالجائزة الشهر الماضي لكان غنيا الآن أي الغنى استمر في الماضي حتى الحاضر .

Choose the correct answer:-

- I'd have gone if it had been early, but it very late indeed.
A) is b) isn't c) had been d) was
- If the Sun us heat and light, there would be no life on Earth.
A) doesn't give b) won't give c) didn't give d) hadn't given
- I study hard if I had an exam.
A) should b) have to c) would d) can
- If he hadn't looked at the sun, he problems with his eyes.
A) wouldn't have b) didn't have c) hadn't had d) would have had
- What would you do if you in my position?
A) are b) had been c) were d) have been
- If it so heavily, we wouldn't have had floods.
A) doesn't rain b) wasn't raining c) didn't rain d) hadn't rained
- If late for school, I take a taxi.
A) I'm b) I was c) I will be d) I were
- I'd help if I
A) ask b) asked c) have asked d) were asked
- If he late again, never let him in.
A) came b) had come c) comes d) will come

- 10- What if you had enough money?
 a) you would do b) would you do c) would you have done d) you would have done
- 11- If I in your position, I would accept the offer.
 a) will be b) were c) am d) had been
- 12- If you hadn't left earlier, you your train.
 a) would have missed b) will miss c) would miss d) wouldn't have missed
- 13- If you well, you wouldn't win the race.
 a) didn't practice b) don't practice c) practised d) practise
- 14- She would have bought that skirt if she enough money.
 a) has b) had had c) has had d) had

Exercises on Grammar

1. If you watch too much television, you..... your eyes.
 a) will damage b) would have damaged c) won't damage d) would damage
2. If you red and green paint, you get brown paint.
 a) mixed b) will mix c) had mixed d) mix
3. She next week's race if she trains hard.
 a) can win b) wins c) won d) would have won
4. If Ahmed had read that book, he what happened at the end.
 a) knew b) will know c) would know d) would have known
5. If the money I had enough, I'd have bought a car.
 a) had b) had been c) have been d) were
6. If I went to London, I my English every day!
 a) would practise b) will practise c) would have practised d) practise
7. I won't go to the park if you with me.
 a) not come b) don't come c) didn't come d) hadn't come
8. If you water, it boils.
 a) will heat b) heated c) had heated d) heat
9. Hassan has worked hard for the test. I'll be surprised if he
 a) doesn't pass b) isn't passing c) hadn't passed d) won't pass
10. If I went to Australia, I my cousins.
 a) will see b) saw c) would see d) had seen
11. Adel bought that phone if it hadn't been so expensive.
 a) might b) might have c) will have d) had
12. If those goats eat the bark on the trees, the trees
 a) die b) will die c) died d) would die
13. If water freezes, to ice?
 a) Does it turn b) it will turn c) it turns d) it turn
14. If the people hadn't grown enough food, they ill.
 a) become b) will become c) would have become d) would become
15. If he hadn't driven so fast, he that accident.
 a) wouldn't have b) wouldn't have had c) didn't have d) hadn't had
16. Would Ahmed be angry if I his bicycle without asking?
 a) take b) will take c) took d) had taken
17. If she hadn't learned how to type, she so many books.
 a) would write b) will write c) wouldn't have written d) would have written
18. If he hadn't been so nervous, he have failed his driving test.
 a) would b) wouldn't c) won't d) could
19. Unless he had followed my advice, he all his money.
 a) would have lost b) would have a loss c) wouldn't have lost d) wouldn't lose
20. If you put water in the freezer, to ice?
 a) turned b) it turns c) will it turn d) Does it turn

21. If you earlier, you wouldn't have missed the train.
a) had left b) leave c) would have left d) left
22. If Mona had come ten minutes earlier, she her boss.
a) would meet b) would have met c) will meet d) meets
23. Would you go to a wedding if you?
a) didn't invite b) hadn't invited c) weren't invited d) invited
24. If I my new car, I wouldn't have a comfortable means of transport
a) had sold b) sold c) sell d) have sold
25. I wouldn't say it unless it true.
a) is b) does c) did d) were
26. If it is very hot tomorrow, we to the beach.
a) don't go b) wouldn't go c) wouldn't have gone d) won't go
27. People who live near volcanoes leave home if they.....
a) erupt b) erupted c) had erupted d) will erupt
28. If there are clouds in the sky tonight, you able to see the moon.
a) aren't b) wouldn't be c) wouldn't have been d) will not be
29. If you wear a hat, your face burnt.
a) won't get b) wouldn't get c) don't get d) can get
30. If he read the story, he.....it.
a) will enjoy b) enjoys c) would enjoy d) can enjoy
31. If she.....enough money, she would have to buy a new dress.
a) is having b) has c) had had d) had
32. If you had told me it important last week, I would have tried harder.
a) was b) were c) had been d) will be
33. Who knows what.....if he had met her ten years before.
a) would happen b) might happen c) might have happened d) happened
34. If they had won with only ten players, it.....a miracle !
a) had been b) was c) would have been d) would be
35. Everything would have been perfect if it.....yesterday.
a) hadn't rained b) wouldn't rain c) weren't raining d) isn't raining
36. If we didn't get heat and light from the sun, thereno life on Earth.
a) would have been b) will be c) is d) would be
37.OK if you look at the sun wearing sunglasses?
a) Was it b) Will it c) Would it be d) Is it
38. If it went on raining for much longer, the river
a) would flood b) flooded c) floods d) flood
39. If the farmer's fields had got very dry last summer, he irrigated them.
a) would have b) wouldn't have c) will have d) won't have
40. If you leave now, to take your keys with you.
a) will forget b) don't forget c) won't forget d) forget
41. Water if the temperature is zero or below.
a) freeze b) freezes c) would freeze d) is freezing
42. You can borrow this book..... as you look after it.
a) provided b) if c) as long d) on condition
43. Mother says we can watch TV on that we do our homework first.
a) condition b) provided c) long as d) if
44. you lost your passport, you'd have to go to the embassy, wouldn't you?
a) Had b) In case of c) Supposing d) Otherwise
45. If it hadn't been for, my experiments would have failed.
a) your had helped b) your helped c) your help d) you help
46. that you lived by the sea, what would you do every day?
a) Condition b) As long c) Imagine d) Supposed
47. he decide to come, please let me know as soon as possible.
a) If b) Should c) Were d) Providing
48. the temperature falls below zero, it freezes.
a) Unless b) Supposing c) If d) On condition that

49. he sleep well tonight, he will feel much happier the next morning.
a) Should b) Imagine that c) Provided that d) As long as
50. Don't go to that restaurant you like Chinese food.
a) if b) if not c) unless d) in case
51. Only open this door..... an emergency.
a) in case b) in case of c) if d) as long as
52. You can go to the park you're home at eight o'clock.
a) provided that b) as long c) supposing d) in case
53. You can't drive a car you are 18 or older.
a) as long as b) unless c) on condition that d) without
54. he to come tomorrow we could borrow his car.
a) Had b) Were c) Should d) If
55. Should she full marks, her parents will be over the moon.
a) gets b) got c) had got d) to get
56. If itfor your help, I wouldn't finish my work on time.
a) weren't b) were c) had been d) hadn't been
57. We wouldn't finish in time everyone worked faster.
a) if it weren't for b) providing c) unless d) without
58. Had you eaten too much, you'd fatter.
a) got b) have to get c) have got d) get
59. Were she full marks, her parents would be over the moon.
a) gets b) got c) had got d) to get
60. Had she full marks, her parents would have been over the moon.
a) gets b) got c) get d) to get
61. missing the bus, I wouldn't have been late for the test.
a) In case of b) On condition of c) If it weren't d) If it hadn't been for
62. They will invest in the project it does not make a lot of money.
a) in case of b) if c) unless d) even if
63. She will graduate next year passing all her courses.
a) supposing b) supposes c) in case of d) To suppose
64. Were the company to collapse, many people their savings.
a) lost b) lose c) will lose d) would lose
65. Had I known earlier that you wanted to join the team, I..... your name on the list.
a) 'd have put b) 'll have put c) 'll put d) 'd put
66. Don't take this course you are ready to study statistics.
a) but for b) in case of c) if d) unless
67. Were, I wouldn't permit this.
a) I were you b) I'm c) I you d) I was you
68. Should you need any help, please me.
a) called b) would have called c) will call d) call
69. the alarm woken me up early. I would have caught the train.
a) Had b) Should c) Were d) Unless
70. We can win the championship, avoiding bad injuries.
a) in case of b) but for c) when d) provided that
71. You can take my car you drive carefully.
a) provided that b) unless c) even if d) had
72. you tell me what is wrong, I can help you.
a) Had b) Were c) Should d) Could

King Lear Act 1 Scene 1

New Vocabulary

| | | | |
|-------------|---------------------|------------------------|-------------------|
| act | فصل فى مسرحية | majesty | جلالة الملك |
| scene | مشهد | foolish | أحمق |
| king | ملك | sword | سيف |
| kingdom | مملكة | terrible | فظيع |
| Duke | دوق / حاكم | kill | يقتل |
| young man | شاب | lady | سيدة |
| pleased | مسرور | expect | يتوقع |
| pleasure | سعادة / سرور | promise | يعد / وعد |
| daughter | ابنة | hate | يكره |
| answer | يجيب / اجابة / رد | without | بدون |
| map | خريطة | suggest | يقترح |
| large | كبير | suddenly | فجأة |
| love | يحب | believe | يعتقد / يؤمن |
| health | صحة | wrong | خطأ |
| beauty | جمال | queen | ملكة |
| beautiful | جميل | unkind | غير عطوف |
| beautify | يجمل | plan | يخطط / خطة |
| rich | غنى | decide to | يقرر ان |
| riches | ثروات / أشياء ثمينة | give an answer to | يعطى رد |
| land | ارض / يهبط | look at | ينظر الى |
| forest | غابة | look after | يعتنى بـ |
| countryside | الريف | look for | يبحث عن |
| wife | زوجة | divide...into | يقسم الى |
| husband | زوج | point to / at | يشير الى |
| describe | يصف | put feeling into words | يعبر عن مشاعره |
| description | وصف | change speech | يغير حديثه |
| duty | واجب / مهمة | wait for | ينتظر لـ |
| marry | يتزوج | in my actions | بالافعال |
| cruel | قاسى | half of | نصف |
| honest | أمين | shout about | يبدى سعادة او فخر |
| strange | اجنبى (صف) | shout at | يصرخ فى |
| stranger | اجنبى (شخص/اسم) | give....away | يمنح / يهدى |
| quiet | هادىء | giveaway | هدية ترويجية |
| power | سلطة | give advice | يعطى نصيحة |
| title | لقب / عنوان كتاب | cruel = unkind to | قاسى مع |

Characters

KING LEAR : The King of Britain

GONERIL : King Lear's eldest daughter

REGAN : King Lear's second daughter

CORDELIA : King Lear's youngest daughter

KING OF FRANCE : He wants to marry Cordelia
DUKE OF BURGUNDY : He also wants to marry Cordelia
DUKE OF ALBANY : Goneril's husband
DUKE OF CORNWALL : Regan's husband
DUKE OF KENT : A good friend of King Lear
DUKE OF GLOUCESTER : A good friend of King Lear
EDGAR : Gloucester's eldest son
EDMUND : Gloucester's youngest son
FOOL : Lear's clown
OSWALD : A servant
OLD MAN : A man who helps Gloucester
GENTLEMAN : A friend of Kent
CAPTAIN : One of Edmund's soldiers
DOCTOR HERALD

Act I Scene i

(In King Lear's Palace.)

(DUKE OF) GLOUCESTER: Ah, the Duke of Kent! Hello, my friend. Have you met my son, Edmund?

(DUKE OF) KENT: I haven't, Kent. He's a fine young man. You must be proud of him.

GLOUCESTER: I'm very proud of him.

EDMUND: I'm pleased to meet you, sir.

GLOUCESTER: Edmund is my second child. I also have another son, Edgar, who is about a year older than Edmund.

EDMUND: Listen! The King is coming. [King Lear enters with Cornwall and Albany and his three daughters, Regan, Goneril and Cordelia. Gloucester and Edmund leave.]

KING LEAR: Listen, everyone. I want to tell you all about my plan. I've decided to give everything in my kingdom to my three daughters, Goneril, Regan and Cordelia. I will also give an answer to the King of France and the Duke of Burgundy. They have both asked to marry my youngest daughter, Cordelia. First, look at this map of my kingdom. I have divided it into three. I want to give the largest part to the daughter who loves me the most. So tell me, my daughters, which of you loves me the most? Goneril, you are the eldest, so you can speak first.

GONERIL: Father, I love you more than anything. No child can love a father more than I love you. I love you more than health, beauty and riches.

CORDELIA: [To herself.] I love my father, but I don't know what to say!

KING LEAR: [Pointing to the map] Goneril, you can have all this land, with its green forests and beautiful countryside. Now, Regan, wife of Cornwall. What does my second daughter want to say?

REGAN: Father, Goneril has described her love for you very well. But I have more to say. Your love is the only thing that makes me happy. I love nobody as much as you.

CORDELIA: [To herself.] What can I say? I don't have the words to say how much I love my father.

KING LEAR: Thank you Regan. I will give a third of our beautiful kingdom to you and your children. [To Cordelia] Now, Cordelia, my youngest daughter. What can you say to make me give you more than I gave to your sisters?

CORDELIA: I can say nothing, father.

KING LEAR: Nothing? Cordelia, if you say nothing, I will give you nothing. Speak again.

CORDELIA: I cannot put my feelings into words. I love you as a daughter should love a father; but not more, and not less.

KING LEAR: But this is not kind, Cordelia. Change your speech a little, or your future will change, too.

CORDELIA: You have always been a good father and it is my duty to love you too. But my sisters say they only love you. How can this be true? Do they not love their husbands, too? If I marry, I will love my husband as much as my father.

KING LEAR: Cordelia. Do you really mean this? Can you be so young but also so cruel?

CORDELIA: Father, I am young but I am honest.

KING LEAR: Then you are not my daughter any more. You are now a stranger to me. I don't know you.

KENT: But your majesty ...

KING LEAR: Be quiet, Kent! I loved Cordelia, and I wanted her to look after me when I was old. Now she must go! But first, call the King of France and the Duke of Burgundy! While we wait for them, listen to what I say: Goneril and her husband Albany, and Regan with her husband Cornwall, will have half of my kingdom each. They will have all the power and riches that come with being a king. All I want is to keep the title of King, but they will have everything else.

KENT: Your majesty, what do you mean? I must speak honestly when my King is being foolish. Your youngest daughter does not shout about her love for you, but that doesn't mean she loves you the least. You mustn't give your country away like this.

KING LEAR: Say nothing more to me, Kent!

KENT: I am not afraid to make you angry if it will help to protect you.

KING LEAR: Then you must go away too! Leave!

KENT: Let me stay and give you good advice, King Lear. You must learn to see better.

KING LEAR: Oh, you are a cruel man! [He puts his hand on his sword.]

(DUKE OF) CORNWALL: Your majesty, please stop!

KENT: say it again, King Lear. You've done a terrible thing.

KING LEAR: Kent! You've got five days to leave my kingdom, or you'll be killed_ Go!

KENT: Then I'll say goodbye to you, my dear King. [To Cordelia.] I hope you stay safe, young lady, because you were honest. And now I say goodbye to all of you; I shall live my life in a new country. [Gloucester enters with the King of France, the Duke of Burgundy and his men.]

GLOUCESTER: Here are the King of France and the Duke of Burgundy, your majesty.

KING LEAR: Burgundy, I will speak to you first. What do you expect to have you marry my daughter Cordelia?

(DUKE OF) BURGUNDY: Your majesty, I only expect to have what you promised me.

KING LEAR: I am sorry, but things have changed. Sir, there she is. You can marry her.

BURGUNDY: I don't understand.

KING LEAR: You'll get my daughter and nothing more. Take her, or leave her. It's your choice.

BURGUNDY: I'm sorry, sir. I cannot marry her without some of your land.

KING LEAR: Then leave her, sir.

CORDELIA: Goodbye, Burgundy! I see now that you love things more than you love me, so I shall not be your wife.

KING LEAR: [To the King of France.] So, the great King of France, I don't want you to marry someone I hate; so I suggest you give your love to a better girl.

(KING OF) FRANCE: But sir, Cordelia was your favourite daughter! It is very strange that she has suddenly lost all your love. I cannot believe that Cordelia could do anything terrible to anyone.

CORDELIA: [To King Lear.] Father, understand that I show my love in my actions, not my words. Please tell him that I haven't done anything wrong to make you hate me.

KING LEAR: I shall not. Go! You will have nothing from me!

KING OF FRANCE: My beautiful Cordelia, you are richer for being poor and I love you more now that you are hated! I'm happy for you to be my wife.

[To the King.] Your daughter will be queen of my country. Say goodbye to them, Cordelia, although they've been unkind to you. You have lost your life here, but you'll find a better one with me.

KING LEAR: She is yours, King of France; I'll never see her face again. [To Cordelia.] Leave now, without my love. Come with me, Burgundy. [King Lear leaves with Burgundy, Cornwall, Albany, and Gloucester]

Exercises on Part 4 KING LEAR Act I Scene i

Choose the correct answer:

- 1-A/ An.....means a larger part of a play.
(scene – tale – act – action)
- 2- A/ An.....means a person that acts plays.
(audience – author – character – writer)
- 3- A/ An.....means a small part of a play which happens in one place.
(scene – chapter – act – tale)
- 4- A/ An.....means a piece of writing that is written for acting in a theatre.
(event – novel – occasion – play)
- 5- A/ An.....means a long, sharp knife.
(arrow – sword – gun – cannon)
- 6-An official name of a job means a/ an.....
(inspector – title – director – address)
- 7-Lear is the main.....in Shakespeare's King Lear.
(character – kingdom – technique – allowance)
- 8-I arrived at the theatre late and missed the first.....of the play.
(action – actor – act – stage)
- 9-The movie contains certain.....which may scare children.
(directors – scenes – actors – trophies)
- 10-A president governs a republic, but a king rules a/an.....
(island – oasis – kingdom – district)
- 11-Mum divided the big room.....two small rooms. (into – onto – to – for)
- 12-Every citizen should know his rights and.....
(duties – exercises – mistakes – practices)

- 13-To give them all your money for nothing, you are.....
(selfish – wise – brave – foolish)
- 14-It's difficult for any footballer to...the title of the best player in the world for years.
(reserve – keep – promote – stay)
- 15-Cutting down.....is a reason for the global warming phenomenon.
(factories – forests – investments – resorts)
- 16-Egypt is full of....., but we don't make the best use of them.
(injuries – earthquakes – riches – weaknesses)
- 17-The police officer asked me to.....the man who stole my bag.
(arrest – develop – describe – forget)
- 18-Soldiers in the past used their.....to fight in battles.
(arms – knives – swords – hands)
- 19-We mustn't be so.....to pets. They should be treated well.
(helpful – polite – cruel – generous)
- 20-Can you me an answer to this question, please?
(have – get – give – spell)
- 21-A president governs a republic, but a /an rules a kingdom.
(Duke – Earl – king – Officer)
- 22-Although he is 83 years old,Magdi Yacoub is still helping many people.
(Duke – King – President – Sir)
- 23-Please, divide the apple into..... Take one and give your sisters the other two.
(halves – thirds – quarters – a half)
- 24-The new department store offers kitchen items as free.....to attract new customers.
(runways – giveaways – surveys – gateways)
- 25-He hasn't chosen a/ an.....for his newest novel yet.
(title – address – cell – flat)
- 26-The police arrive soon at the.....of the accident.
(scene – seen – chapter – act)
- 27-You can wait for the doctor or leave and come another time. It's your.....
(voice – noise – choice – notice)
- 28-His....., the King, requests your presence at the royal palace at once.
(pardon – excellence – highness – majesty)
- 29-Before he died, he.....most of his money to charity.
(took over – gave up – shouted out – gave away)
- 30-My sister's exam results are something to..... She got the full mark in all of them.
(call for – take up – reply to – shout about)
-

King Lear Act 1 Scene 2

New Vocabulary

| | | | |
|--------------|----------------------|---------------------------|---------------------|
| palace | قصر | advice | نصيحة |
| fail | يفشل | exit | يخرج / مخرج |
| failure | فشل | deceive | يخدع |
| planning | تخطيط | fool | غبي / أحمق |
| discover | يكشف | serious | خطير / جاد |
| truth | حقيقة | loyal to | مخلص لـ |
| ill health | صحة مريضة | loyalty to | اخلاص لـ |
| bring | يحضّر / يجلب | in the future | في المستقبل |
| power | قوة / سلطة | good to | جيد / طيب مع |
| anger | غضب | good for | مفيد لـ |
| angry | غاضب | good at | جيد في |
| problem | مشكلة | take care of | يعتنى بـ |
| castle | قلعة | look after | يعتنى بـ |
| letter | خطاب | fail to + inf. | يفشل أن |
| inherit | يرث | prepare for | يجهز / يعد لـ |
| inheritance | ارث | in his old age | في كبر عمره |
| heir | وريث | keep money from | يبعد نقود عن |
| heiress | وريثة | go out | يخرج |
| clever | ماهر | worried about | قلق بشأن |
| succeed | ينجح / يخلف | angry with | غاضب من (شخص) |
| success | نجاح / ناجح | find out (about) | يكشف عن |
| successful | ناجح | throw in | يرمي في |
| beat | يهزم / يضرب | It's time to +inf. | انه وقت أن... |
| notice | يلاحظ / ملاحظة | It's time for (n) (v-ing) | انه وقت من أجل |
| hide | يختبئ | what to do | ماذا ان نفعل |
| pocket | جيب | in the end | في النهاية |
| forgive | يسامح | stay with | يبقى مع |
| test | اختبار / يختبر | a poor decision | قرار ضعيف (بائس) |
| discuss | يناقش | make a decision | يتخذ قرار |
| conversation | محادثة | become mad | يصبح مجنوناً |
| immediately | في الحال / فوراً | discover the truth | يكشف الحقيقة |
| honest | أمين | know the truth | يعرف الحقيقة |
| strange | غريب | tell the truth | يقول الحقيقة |
| die | يموت | have(make) a plan | لديه / يصنع خطة |
| dead | ميت | through a window | من خلال الشباك |
| income | دخل | become a problem for | تصبح مشكلة لـ |
| handwriting | كتابة اليد / خط اليد | listen to a conversation | يستمع للمحادثة |
| adult | بالغ | say unkind things to | يقول اشياء غير طيبة |
| cruel | قاسي | =say anything unkind to | يقول اي شيء غير طيب |
| dangerous | خطير | go near | يقترّب |

Act I, Scene I, continued

[In King Lear's Palace]

FRANCE: Cordelia, it is time to leave your country now. Say goodbye to your sisters.**CORDELIA:** Goneril and Regan, I am sad to leave you both. My heart is broken. Be good to our father. If he still loved me, I'd take good care of him! Please look after him well.**GONERIL:** Don't tell us what to do, Cordelia.**REGAN:** Yes, go to your husband. You've failed to do what your father asked you to do. Now, you've got what you deserve.**CORDELIA:** I don't know what you are planning, sisters, but remember everyone discovers the truth in the end. Goodbye!**FRANCE:** Come with me, my dear Cordelia. [The King of France and Cordelia leave.]**GONERIL:** Sister Regan, we must talk. I think our father will leave here tonight.**REGAN:** I'm sure he will, and he'll leave with you. Next month, he'll stay with my husband Cornwall and I.**GONERIL:** Our father always loved Cordelia the most, and a poor decision has made him send her away.**REGAN:** He is becoming a little mad in his old age.**GONERIL:** Even when he was younger and healthy, he was a difficult man. So we must be prepared for what ill health and old age will bring.**REGAN:** He was angry when he sent Kent away today. He will probably be angry more often in the future.**GONERIL:** Let's sit together and talk. If our father still has some power, his anger will become a problem for us.**REGAN:** You are right. Let's think about what we can do.**GONERIL:** We must do something, and quickly.

(At the Duke of Gloucester's Castle. Edmund enters with a letter.)

EDMUND: My father Gloucester says that his first son, Edgar, will get his land when he dies. But why should I not have my inheritance just because I'm twelve or fourteen months younger than my brother? Is it just because I'm the second son? I'm just as strong and kind as my brother, and as clever too. Well, elder brother, Edgar, I will have your land. Our father loves me, his younger son, as much as he loves you. And I have a letter here. If this letter succeeds, then Edmund the younger son will beat the older son Edgar!

[Gloucester enters.]

GLOUCESTER: All Edmund, my son! Have you heard? The King has sent Kent away! And the King of France has left with Cordelia! And the King has left the palace tonight without his powers! This has all happened so quickly!

[Gloucester notices Edmund hiding the letter.]

What are you doing Edmund?

EDMUND: Nothing, father.

GLOUCESTER: Why are you trying to hide that letter? What's in it?

EDMUND: Nothing, sir.

GLOUCESTER: Then, why did you hide it in your pocket? Let me see it.

EDMUND: Please forgive me, father. It is a letter from my brother Edgar that I haven't finished reading yet; but I don't think you should read it.

GLOUCESTER: Let me see that!

EDMUND: OK, but I hope he only wrote this to test me and my loyalty to my family,

GLOUCESTER: [Reads the letter.]

When we respect older people too much, it makes it hard for the young to live well. Our parents keep our money from us until we are too old to enjoy it. Older people only have power because we give it to them. Come and see me, so that we can discuss this. If our

father were dead, you could enjoy half his income, and be loved by your brother Edgar.' Did my son Edgar write this letter? When did you receive this? Who brought it?

EDMUND: It wasn't brought to me, sir. I found it. It was thrown in through my bedroom window.

GLOUCESTER: Are you sure the writing is your brother's?

EDMUND: Yes, it is his handwriting, father.

GLOUCESTER: Has he ever talked to you about this before?

EDMUND: No, never. But I've often heard him say that when a son becomes an adult, he should be given some of his father's income.

GLOUCESTER: Oh, what a cruel son! Go and find him, Edmund. Where is he?

EDMUND: I don't know, father. Please, don't be angry with my brother. Let's find out what he meant, then you can decide what to do. I'm sure he wrote this to test my love and loyalty to you, and for nothing more dangerous than that.

GLOUCESTER: Do you really think so?

EDMUND: Yes. Listen, I have a plan. I'll hide you somewhere tonight. I'll discuss it with my brother and you can listen to our conversation. Then you'll know what he really thinks.

GLOUCESTER: My son cannot be so cruel to a father who loves him so much. Edmund, find Edgar and make him talk to you. I want to know the truth.

EDMUND: I'll go and find him immediately.

GLOUCESTER: Find him, Edmund, and be careful. (to himself) What is happening? I cannot believe that Kent has been sent away! He is an honest man. It is all too strange.

(Gloucester exits. Edgar enters.)

EDMUND: Ah, Edgar. There you are. How are you? When did you last see our father?

EDGAR: I am well, Edmund. I saw our father last night.

EDMUND: And did you talk to him?

EDGAR: Yes, we spent two hours together.

EDMUND: Did you say anything unkind to him? He's very angry with you at the moment. Please don't go near him until he's less angry.

EDGAR: Really? Then somebody has lied about me.

EDMUND: That's what I'm worried about. Stay with me for now. I'll take you to see our father when he feels better. Here's my key. Oh, and if you go out, take your sword.

EDGAR: My sword? But why?

EDMUND: That's the best advice I can give you. Please, go quickly!

[Edgar exits.]

EDMUND: My brother and father trust me, which makes them easy to deceive. I need these two fools to make my plan work. If I can't get some land in the correct way, I'll have to be clever to get it.

[Edmund exits.]

Exercises on KING LEAR Act I Scene i/ Scene ii

Choose the correct answer:

- 1-A/ An.....means a fully grown person who is legally responsible for their actions.
(teenager – baby – adult – toddler)
- 2-means the money, property, etc. that you receive from someone after they died..
(Inheritance – Expectation – Tolerance – Intention)
- 3-A strong feeling of support or allegiance means.....
(responsibility – loyalty – creativity – popularity)
- 4-To make someone believes something that is not true means to.....him/her.
(employ – include – deceive – create)
- 5-My little sister always tells the..... She never lies.
(truth – truce – lies – heir)
- 6-It is natural to feel.....sometimes, but it is important to learn to control it.
(trust – anger – ill – sweet)
- 7-Ahmed is always a/an.....friend, and never does anything to hurt me.
(existent – loyal – awful – faithless)
- 8-My father has finallyin his attempts to quit smoking.
(deceived – succeeded – managed – abled)
- 9-Stress often brings.....health and damages the body.
(mental – physical – good – ill)
- 10-I think that.....is the most important quality that a best friend can show you.
(survival – loyalty – disloyalty – treasure)
- 11-We really wanted to climb the mountain, and we all felt very happy when we.....
(deserved – succeeded – deceived – served)
- 12-My uncle has a small.....as a cleaner.
(product – income – quantity – extraction)
- 13-You can go into the building one way and.....through a different door.

(enter – exit – fall – succeed)

14-I.....one million dollar from my uncle, who died last month.

(succeeded – kidnapped – inherited – produced)

15-I really.....your opinion. That's why I've come here to ask you for advice.

(serve – rust – trust – anger)

16-Unfortunately, surgeons.....to save the young lady's life. She died while having an operation.

(failed – fell – felt – felled)

17-Youris too difficult to read. I tried many times, but I couldn't read it.

(option – occasion – handwriting – products)

18-We must all take care to preserve those old buildings as they are part of our cultural and historical.....

(heritage – celebration – heir – survival)

19-Our neighbour doesn't have any sons or daughters. After his death, his nephews will be his only.....

(inheritance – heritage – heirs – celebrities)

20-There is a fire.....next to the men's bathroom, through which you can evacuate the building in case of emergency.

(service – exit – income – product)

21-I took a good care.....my grandfather when he suffered from coronavirus.

(with – in – on – of)

22-After breaking his mother's mobile, he.....to be punished by staying at home at the weekend. (discussed – deserved – described – reserved)

23-He was.....away from the playground because of his bad behaviour.

(done – spent – sent – lent)

24-He managed to.....them by his fake news.

(receive – deceive – believe – grieve)

25-They swore their.....to the king.

(ability – royal – loyal – loyalty)

26-After the king's death, the title passed by.....to the eldest son.

(confidence – intelligence – difference – inheritance)

27-Do you think Mohamed Mahmoud's injury is.....? He was taken to hospital after the match. (funny – serious – series – broken)

28-It's important to....., but the most important is to get high marks to join a good university. (succeed – fail – fall – test)

29-It is important to control your feeling of.....

(anger – truth – lie – income)

30-The seller says that this purse is made of original leather, but I don'thim.

(deceive – succeed – lie – trust)

.....

King Lear Act 1 Scene II /scene IV

New Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---------------|--------------------|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| servant | خادم | solve | يحل |
| hit | يضرب | solution | حل |
| pull | جندى | behave | يتصرف / يسلك |
| exit | يخرج | behaviour | سلوك / تصرف |
| body | جسم | mad | مجنون |
| unhappy | غير سعيد | noisy | ضوضائى |
| foolish (adj) | غبى | noise | ضوضاء |
| fool (n) | شخص غبى / مهرج | power | سلطة / قوة |
| exist | يوجد | guilt | ذنب |
| existence | وجود | guilty | مذنب |
| disguise | يتنكر | work hard | يعمل بجد |
| ready | جاهز | (be) guilty of | مذنب بشأن |
| honest | امين | behave badly | يتصرف سيئا |
| dishonest | غير امين | get angry about | يغضب من (شئ) |
| follow | يتبع | get angry with | يغضب من (شخص/شئ) |
| well | حسنا / بصحة جيدة | stay with | يبقى مع |
| rude | وقح | have the power | لديه السلطة |
| notice | يلاحظ / ملاحظة | give away | يتخلص من / يستغنى |
| immediately | فى الحال | in different clothes | بملابس مختلفة |
| hold | يمسك | work for | يعمل لدى |
| cart | عربة كارو | give advice | يعطى نصيحة |
| encourage | يشجع | unkind to | غير طيب مع |
| wise | حكيم | What's the matter? | ما الامر؟ |
| surprise | مفاجأة | rather than | بدلا من |
| surprised | مدهش | have trouble | لديه متاعب |
| surprising | مدهش | angry with | غاضب من شخص |
| shout | يصرخ / صرخة | make problems | يسبب مشكلات |
| mad | مجنون | have problems | لديه مشكلات |
| attendants | الحاضرين | a taste of her own medicine | جزاء من نفس العمل |
| attack | يهجم / هجوم | hold his head | يمسك رأسه |
| safe | أمن | encourage...to + inf | يشجع....على فعل شئ |
| save | يوفر / ينقذ / يحفظ | pull the horse | يجر الحصان |
| safety | أمان | prepare the horse | يجهز الحصان |
| safely | بأمان | The cart is pulling a horse | الامور ليست فى الوضع الصحيح |

Act I, Scenes iii-iv

[At the Duke of Albany's Palace. Goneril enters with her servant Oswald]

GONERIL: Did my father, King Lear, hit my servant?

OSWALD: Yes, madam.

GONERIL: I must do something. His soldiers are starting to behave badly, and my father gets angry about everything. When he comes here, I won't speak to him. I'll tell him that I am ill.

OSWALD: He's coming, madam; I can hear him.

GONERIL: Tell the other servants not to do what he asks them. If he's unhappy, he can stay with my sister. The foolish old man still wants to have the power that he's given away!

OSWALD: Yes, madam.

GONERIL: write to my sister immediately and tell her my plans.

[She exits.]

[At the Duke of Albany's Palace. Kent enters in different clothes.]

KENT: I've disguised myself in different clothes, and I have changed now I usually speak, so I can help the man who told me to leave. I still love the King and continue to work hard for him, but he won't know me.

[King Lear enters with soldiers and servants.]

KING LEAR: Get my dinner ready.

[A servant exits.]

[To Kent] Who are you?

KENT: I am a poor but honest man.

KING LEAR: What do you want?

KENT: I want to help you, sir.

KING LEAR: Do you know me?

KENT: No, sir; but I want to help you because I can see that you are an important man.

KING LEAR: What can you do?

KENT: I can give good and honest advice.

KING LEAR: Then follow me. You can be my servant.

[Oswald enters.]

You, where's my daughter?

OSWALD: I'm sorry, sir ...

[He exits.]

KING LEAR: What did the man say? Call him back.

SOLDIER: He said that your daughter wasn't well,

KING LEAR: Why didn't he come back when I called him?

SOLDIER: Your majesty, he was very rude. I don't know what the problem is; but the servants, the Duke and your daughter are all being very unkind to you.

KING LEAR: I've noticed that too. But where's my Fool? I haven't seen him for two days.

SOLDIER: He has been very unhappy since Cordelia went to France.

KING LEAR: Don't say her name to me! Go and tell Goneril that I want to speak to her.

[The soldier exits. Oswald and the Fool enter.]

Oh, you, come here! Who am I?

OSWALD: My lady's father.

KING LEAR: My lady's father? How rude!

[King Lear hits him.]

OSWALD: Don't hit me, my lord.

KENT: [Hitting him.] Don't be rude to the King or hit you, tool

KING LEAR: Thank you. You are a good man.

[Goneril enters.]

LEAR: What's the matter, Goneril? Why are you holding your head?

FOOL: You should worry, old King, because you gave everything away, rather than worrying about her head. One day, you will want everything back.

GONERIL: Father, are you encouraging your men to behave badly? Your Fool says and does what he wants.

FOOL: Even a fool knows when the cart is pulling the horse.

KING LEAR: Does anyone here know who I am? Tell me!

GONERIL: You're old and you should be wise. But you're keeping a hundred soldiers here; they are noisy and rude. Please don't have so many soldiers, and only keep the men who can behave well.

KING LEAR: [angry] What did you say? Call my soldiers. You won't have any more trouble from me, because now I have only one daughter left.

[Albany enters and he is very surprised]

[To the soldiers.] Prepare my horses.

ALBANY: Please, sic wait.

KING LEAR: [To himself.] Oh, why was I angry with Cordelia? She was not as rude to me as Goneril. Why was I so foolish?

ALBANY: Your majesty I don't know what's made you angry, but I'm not guilty.

KING LEAR: That might be true, but listen. If Goneril has a child one day, and the child is cruel to her, she will understand how I feel. Then she will have a taste of her own medicine.

[King Lear exits.]

ALBANY: What has happened, Goneril?

GONERIL: Nothing. Let him shout. He is a mad old man.

[King Lear enters again.]

KING LEAR: Goneril, you have told fifty of my soldiers to go!

ALBANY: What is the matter, sir?

KING LEAR: I'll tell you. [To Goneril] I cannot believe that you have the power to make me so unhappy. But you have. I still have one daughter left, and I am sure she will be kind to me when she hears what you have done. She will not be happy with you!

[King Lear exits with Kent, and Attendants.]

GONERIL: Did you hear that, my husband?

ALBANY: You know how much I love you, Goneril, but

GONERIL: Do not say more. [To the Fool.] You, go.

[The Fool exits.]

GONERIL: Is it a good idea to let him keep a hundred soldiers to help him in his old age? They might attack us.

ALBANY: I think you are worrying too much.

GONERIL: It's better to worry and be safe. I've written to my sister Regan and told her everything. I'm not angry with you because you asked me to be kinder to my father, but you are being foolish.

ALBANY: Maybe you know more than I do, Goneril, but I think you are making problems rather than solving them.

[They exit.]

Exercises on KING LEAR Act I Scene iii - iv

Choose the correct answer:

- 1-To.....means to try to hurt someone.
(**attack – attract – protect – reserve**)
- 2-Some children are.....to their mothers when they are upset.
(**rude – rode – kind – polite**)
- 3-She.....herself as a man so she could fight on the battlefield.
(**disguised – created – killed – invented**)
- 4-If someone is wise, they are
(**mad – clever – foolish – crazy**)
- 5-My father is starting to.....angry with everything.
(**fall – get – go – being**)
- 6-The.....who works in our house is good. That's why my father gives him a good salary.
(**serpent – servant – slave – prince**)
- 7-Doctors should.....heavy smokers to give up smoking.
(**discourage – dissuade – dishearten – encourage**)
- 8-My sister is She always tells the truth and doesn't cheat or steal.
(**honest – dishonest – deceitful – criminal**)
- 9-My motherme a good piece of advice yesterday.
(**took – gave – made – received**)
- 10-I don't like nightclubs because they are too crowded and.....
(**quiet – useful – noisy – calm**)
- 11-The policeman.....himself not to be recognized by the criminals.
(**disbelieved – disappeared – disturbed – disguised**)
- 12-I had a bad headache and.....my head with pain.
(**held – told – folded – called**)
- 13-After painting our flat we.....away all our old things.
(**got – gave – brought – escaped**)
- 14-At first, some people thought him....., but he wasn't the killer.
(**nasty – guilty – innocent – tolerant**)
- 15-Instead of solving the problem, he.....another one.
(**did – gave – made – spent**)
- 16-When I got low marks, I was.....because I expected more than that.
(**delighted – fascinated – exhausted – surprised**)
- 17-Being....., no one likes him.
(**polite – cheerful – rude – clever**)
- 18-Everything is.....for the celebration. We hope it will be nice.
(**repaired – behaved – prepared – attended**)
- 19-Although they were.....all the match, they received two goals.
(**attracting – taking – practicing – attacking**)
- 20-To.....means to change your appearance so that people cannot recognize you.
(**interrupt – disturb – confuse – disguise**)

General Exercises on Act 1

Choose the correct answer

1. It's impolite to while talking with your parents.
a. shut b. shout c. shoot d. shuttle
2. What a goal! That was a real beauty. The word "beauty" is a/an
a. noun b. verb c. adjective d. adverb
3. I know the singer's name but I don't know the..... of the song.
a. address b. spelling c. rhyme d. title
4. You can count on him because he always tells the
a. lies b. habit c. fact d. truth
5. All my neighbours Mr Ali because he is a good man.
a. suspect b. neglect c. respect d. affect
6. We should meet to the elections program for the party.
a. discuss b. deserve c. disappoint d. disappear
7. He was filled with at the bad way he had been treated.
a. happiness b. anger c. confidence d. fun
8. She was guilty..... stealing the gold necklace.
a. in b. at c. with d. of
9. After burning her neighbour's house, a fire started in her house to have a taste of her own ...
a. medicine b. drugs c. cigarette d. lighter
10. The rude child shouted at his mother badly. Is the cart. a horse?
a. eating b. pulling c. pushing d. feeding
11. Something you do because it is right or part of your job means a/an.....
a. right b. attitude c. duty d. intention
12. To separate something into two or more parts means to.....
a. divide b. share c. multiply d. perform
13. means not sensible or clever.
a. Selfish b. Foolish c. Tolerant d. Confident
14. A country that has a king or a queen means a/an
a. area b. state c. kingdom d. environment
15. mean a lot of money and valuable things.
a. Measures b. Powers c. Stages d. Riches
16. To..... means that it is right for someone to have something because of the way they have behaved or because what they are.
a. deserve b. preserve c. serve d. reserve
17. Money received, especially on a regular basis, for Work or through investments means a/an.....
a. treasure b. pleasure c. income d. inheritance
18. To..... means to believe in the reliability, truth, or ability of Someone.
a. hurt b. trust c. treat d. defeat
19. A/An..... means a person whose job is to serve or help people in a public place.
a. expert b. attendant c. servant d. designer

King Lear Act II Scene I /scene II

New Vocabulary

| | | | |
|-------------|--------------------|--------------------|----------------------|
| castle | قلعة | disguise | يتنكر |
| plan | خطة / يخطط | beg | يتوسل / يشحذ |
| guard | حارس / يحرس | beggar | شحاذ / متسول |
| ready | جاهز / مستعد | dirty | قذر |
| arrest | يقبض على | disbelief | عدم تصديق |
| hide | يختبئ / يخبئ | belief | تصديق / ايمان |
| pretend | يتظاهر | faithful | مخلص |
| fight | مشاجرة / يتشاجر | answer | رد / اجابة / يرد |
| Pick up | يلتقط | wrong | خطأ / مخطيء |
| sword | سيف | catch | يقبض على / يمسك |
| quickly | بسرعة | back | ظهر |
| blood | دم | stocks | عمود خشبي (للتعذيب) |
| cut | يجرح / جرح | in the stocks | فى الفلق (الة تقييد) |
| injured | مصاب | call out | يصرخ / ينادى |
| follow | يتبع | change his mind | يغير رأيه |
| finally | فى النهاية | a stab in the back | طعنة فى الظهر |
| terrible | فظيع | my heart is broken | قلبي محطم |
| reward | مكافأة / يكافىء | what happened? | ماذا حدث؟ |
| award | جائزة / يمنح جائزة | refuse a plan | يرفض خطة |
| persuade | يقنع | stop a plan | يمنع خطة |
| persuasion | اقناع | run away = escape | يهرب |
| persuasive | مقنع | stop people from | يمنع الناس من |
| profit | يربح / ربح | plot against | يتآمر ضد |
| stab | يطعن / طعنة | careful of | حريص على |
| port | ميناء | look dirty | يبدو متسخ / قذر |
| inherit | يرث | faithful to | مخلص ل |
| inheritance | ميراث | (be) in a fight | فى معركة / شجار |
| correct | صحيح / يصحح | get (to) | يصل لى |
| plot | يتآمر / مؤامرة | get here | يصل هنا |
| kill | يقتل | guilty | مذنب |
| warn | يحذر | guilt | ذنب |
| duty | واجب | safe | أمن |

Act II, Scenes i-ii

[In the Castle of the Duke of Gloucester. Edmund enters.]

EDMUND: [To himself.] So, I hear that the Duke of Cornwall is coming here tonight. That's good! It will help my plan a lot. My father has a guard ready to arrest my brother. But there's one more thing I should do first. Here's Edgar.

[Edgar enters.]

Brother, can we talk? Our father's coming here soon, so you must go! He knows you are hiding here. But first, we must pretend to fight. Pick up your sword. Quickly, before our father gets here. Now run from here, brother.

[Calls out.] Help me!

[To his brother again.] Goodbye, Edgar.

[Edgar exits.]

[To himself.] If there's some blood on me, people will think I've been in a fight.

[He cuts his arm.] Father, father! Stop him, stop him! Help

[Gloucester enters with servants.]

EDMUND: Look, at my arm, father, I'm injured.

GLOUCESTER: What happened? Where's Edgar?

EDMUND: He ran that way. When I refused his plan

GLOUCESTER: You there, follow him!

[Some servants exit.] What plan, Edmund?

EDMUND: His plan is to kill you, father. I told him that I loved you. Finally, when he understood that I didn't want to help with his terrible plan, he cut my arm with his sword. Then he saw that I was ready to fight him, and he quickly ran away.

GLOUCESTER: He'll not run very far. If he stays in this country, we'll soon find him. Then we'll arrest him. The Duke of Cornwall is coming here tonight. I will tell him that there's a reward for any man who finds Edgar. And anyone who hides him will be arrested, too.

EDMUND: Father, I tried to persuade Edgar to stop his plan, but he wanted to continue with it. I told him that I would tell you all about it. "Do you think anyone will believe you?" Edgar said. "No. say that it was all your idea. They know that you will profit most if father dies, not me!"

GLOUCESTER: This is terrible! It is a stab in the back. I'll stop people from leaving England's ports; Edgar won't leave the country. Thank you, my loving son Edmund. Now I will do everything to help you. You will inherit all my land.

[The Duke of Cornwall enters with his wife Regan and servants.]

CORNWALL: Gloucester, how are you, my friend? Since I've arrived here, I've heard some strange news.

REGAN: If it is true, it is terrible news!

GLOUCESTER: Oh Regan, my heart is broken!

REGAN: Did your son really try to kill you? Your son Edgar?

GLOUCESTER: Yes, it's true! I wish it were different.

REGAN: I know Edgar spent time with my father's soldiers.

EDMUND: That's correct, madam, he spent some time with them.

REGAN: Then the soldiers have given him the idea of plotting against his father, trying to kill him, so that he can use his father's money. I've just had a message from my sister Goneril about the soldiers. She has warned me to be careful of them. If they come to my house, I won't be there.

CORNWALL: Edmund, I hear that you've been a good son to your father.

EDMUND: It was my duty, sir.

GLOUCESTER: Edmund told me of Edgar's plan, and he got this cut on his arm when he tried to stop him.

CORNWALL: Is anyone following Edgar?

GLOUCESTER: Yes, I've sent some guards.

CORNWALL: The guards must arrest him. Edmund, I'd like you to work for me. I need men like you that I can trust.

EDMUND: I'd be happy to help you, sir.

GLOUCESTER: I thank you, Cornwall

[They exit.]

[In the countryside. Edgar enters.]

EDGAR: I've heard people say that I'm guilty! But I was riot caught, because I hid in this old tree. It's not safe for me to go to any port now. Guards are looking for me. So I must disguise myself as a beggar. I will change my clothes and make my face and hair look dirty.

[He changes his clothes.]

I'll wear these clothes of a poor man, and live outside under the rain. Nobody will see Edgar any more. From now, I'll call myself Poor Tom.

[Edgar exits.]

[Enter, Lear, Fool and Knight. Kent is in the stocks.]

KENT: Good morning, my lord.

KING LEAR: [Looks in disbelief at Kent in the stocks] What has happened? Who did this to you?

KENT: It was your daughter Regan and her husband Cornwall, sir.

KING LEAR: But you are working for the King! They should not do this to you! This is terrible. Where's my daughter?

[King Lear exits.]

KENT: Fool, why has the King got so few soldiers now? **FOOL:** He has no money, so he has fewer people to help him. But I'll be faithful to him; the Fool will always stay, and let the wise men run away.

[King Lear and Gloucester enter together.]

KING LEAR: Why don't they want to speak to me? You say they are sick? They are tired? That's no answer.

GLOUCESTER: I'm sorry, your majesty, but you know that the Duke of Cornwall easily feels angry. He won't change his mind.

KING LEAR: What? He's angry! Well, I'm angry, too!

[He sees Kent in the stocks again.]

Why is he sitting in the stocks? Go and tell the Duke of Cornwall and his wife that I want to speak to them, now!

[Gloucester exits.]

KING LEAR: Oh, my heart, my unhappy heart!

[Cornwall, Regan, Gloucester and Servants enter]

REGAN: Father, I'm pleased to see you.

KING LEAR: My dear daughter Regan, your sister is nothing to me. Oh Regan, she's been so cruel to me! You won't believe how badly she has behaved.

REGAN: I don't think my sister could be unkind to you. If she has stopped your badly behaved soldiers, she has only done it to help you.

KING LEAR: I'm very angry with her!

REGAN: Father, please go back to my sister's house; you're the one who is wrong, not my good sister Goneril.

Exercises on KING LEAR Act II Scene i - ii

Choose the correct answer:

- 1-A / An.....means money for someone who finds or helps someone important.
(award – gift – reward – assistance)
- 2-Someone who asks other people for food or money means a/ an.....
(blogger – beggar – lawyer – expert)
- 3-To make benefit from something means to.....
(use – select – deduce – profit)
- 4-.....means the feeling that something cannot really be happening.
(Disbelief – Shame – Disappearance – Shy)
- 5-To act in a way that is not true means to.....
(intend – attend – pretend – extend)
- 6-A / An.....means someone who protects a place or a person.
(guide – guard – assistant – explorer)
- 7-The officer.....the criminal to lie down and raise his hands.
(claimed – begged – ordered – said)
- 8-The mother.....her child not to come near the fire.
(warned – said – talked – spoke)
- 9-To “stab someone in the back” means to do something.....to someone who trusted you.
(harmful – useful – attractive – funny)
- 10-A / An.....is someone who protects a place or a person.
(architect – archaeologist – guard – oculist)
- 11-I finally managed to.....her to go to the zoo with me.
(make – persuade – dissuade – let)
- 12-A / An.....is a place where ships enter and leave a town or country.
(airport – board – shuttle – port)
- 13-We admire people who remain.....to their principles to the last.
(disloyal – wicked – faithful – evil)
- 14-My father gave me a / an.....because I came first in my class.
(award – punishment – reward – money)
- 15-This shop’s daily.....is usually around 1000 pounds. The owner must be happy.
(loss – profit – prophet – debt)
- 16-He.....up his cap from the floor and stuck it back on his head.
(prayed – woke – rose – picked)
- 17-On seeing the police officer, the thief ran.....
(way – away – a way - over)
- 18-The policeman.....the criminal and sent him to prison.
(was caught – rewarded – arrested – awarded)
- 19-My name is Ramy, but my friendsme Romeo.
(call – cool – speak – talk)
- 20-They asked me to.....their house while they were away. They trusted him so much.
(rob – break – guard – destroy)

King Lear Act II Scene III / Act III scene I

New Vocabulary

| | | | |
|--------------|------------------|------------------------|-----------------|
| cruel | قاسى | against | ضد |
| rude | وقح | army | جيش |
| hold | يمسك | port | ميناء |
| behave | يسلك | show | يعرض / عرض |
| behaviour | سلوك | ring | خاتم / يتصل |
| choice | اختيار | apologise | يعتذر |
| mad | مجنون | room | حجرة / فراغ |
| patient | صبور / مريض | double | يضاعف |
| patience | صبر | stay warm | يبقى دافئا |
| huge | ضخم | lock....out | يطرد |
| storm | عاصفة | turn....back on | يتخلى عن |
| danger | خطر | set eyes on | يرى |
| bring | يحضر | go mad | يصاب بالجنون |
| beggar | متسول | keep you warm | يحفظك دافئا |
| nearly | تقريبا | I'd rather + inf. | يفضل |
| blow | يهب | It's a wet night | انها ليلة ممطرة |
| nowhere | لا مكان | apologise to someone | يعتذر لشخص |
| shelter | مأوى / يأوى | apologise for | يعتذر عن |
| teach | يعلم | stay with | يبقى مع |
| lock | يغلق / قفل | cruel to | قاسى مع |
| persuade | يقنع | rude to | وقح مع |
| terrible | فظيع | look at | ينظر الى |
| weather | طقس | until the end of | حتى نهاية |
| fight | يتشاجر / مشاجرة | in front of | امام |
| cave | كهف | ask....for | يطلب |
| bear | دب / يتحمل | go back with | يعود مع |
| jokes | نكات | would prefer to + inf. | يفضل |
| trust | يثق / ثقة | make ....mad | يجعل....مجنونا |
| disagreement | عدم اتفاق / خلاف | ready for | جاهز ل |
| spy | جاسوس / يتجسس | feel bad about | يشعر سيئا بخصوص |
| spies | جواسيس | at the right time | فى الوقت الصحيح |
| notice | يلاحظ / ملاحظة | talk to / with | يتحدث مع |

Act II Scene III / Act III scene I**(In the countryside.)**

KING LEAR: Regan, I will not stay with your sister Goneril. Please, give me clothes, food and a bed. Remember, I am old.

REGAN: Please, father! Go back and stay with my sister.

KING LEAR: Never, Regan! She's told half of my soldiers to leave! She's been cruel and rude to me! I want rain to always fall on her head!

REGAN: You'll want the same to happen to me soon.

KING LEAR: No, Regan, never say bad things about you. Goneril's eyes are cruel, but yours are kind. You would never turn your back on me. And you'd not lock me out of your house. You understand how a daughter should help her father. You haven't forgotten that I've given you half of my kingdom.

REGAN: Father, why are you unhappy?

CORNWALL: Listen! Who's coming?

REGAN: It's my sister. She said in her letter that she would come soon.

[Goneril enters with Oswald.]

KING LEAR: Who put my servant in the stocks? Regan, I hope that you didn't know about this.

[To Goneril.] You shouldn't want to look at me. Oh Regan, why are you holding her hand?

GONERIL: Why shouldn't she hold my hand, father? What have I done wrong?

KING LEAR: Oh, how unhappy you've made me. You're too cruel! Why won't you apologise to me? And why is my servant in the stocks?

CORNWALL: I put him there, sir, because he didn't behave well.

KING LEAR: You? Was it you?

REGAN: Please, father, you're ill today. Stay with my sister until the end of the month. Then, if you ask half of your soldiers to leave, you can come and stay with me.

KING LEAR: Stay with her, and ask my soldiers to leave? No, I would rather sleep outside under the stars.

[To himself] Return with Goneril? I would prefer: to stand in front of the King of France and ask him for food. Go back with her? I would prefer to be the servant of this terrible man.

[Points at Oswald.]

GONERIL: It's your choice, father.

KING LEAR: Please, daughter, don't make me mad. I won't set eyes on you again, my child; goodbye. We won't meet any more. But you will soon feel bad about what you've done. Be patient for now, and I'll stay with Regan with my hundred soldiers.

REGAN: That is not possible. My home isn't ready for you. Listen to my sister. Are fifty soldiers not enough for you?

GONERIL: My servants could help you.

REGAN: Yes, why not, father? We have enough servants. When you come to me (for now I see the danger of so many men), I ask you to bring just twenty-five soldiers. I won't have rooms for any more.

KING LEAR: But Regan, I gave you everything ...

REGAN: And you gave it to me at the right time!

KING LEAR: I gave you enough to live well for all time! I asked for just one thing — to keep a hundred soldiers. — Are you really asking me to come with just twenty-five, Regan?

REGAN: Don't talk to me any more about this.

KING LEAR: [TO Goneril.] Then I'll go back with you. Your fifty soldiers is double her twenty-five, so you must love me twice as much as she does.

GONERIL: Listen, father. You do not need twenty-five, ten or even five soldiers in a house where we have fifty servants to look after you.

REGAN: Why do you even need one soldier?

KING LEAR: Why do I need them? Even the poorest beggars have things that they don't need. If you those beautiful clothes you're wearing. They don't keep you warm at all. But, if you ask me what I really need, I need patience! Oh, give me patience, or I will go mad!
[King Lear exits with Gloucester and the Fool. There is a huge storm.]

CORNWALL: We should go inside; there's a big storm coming.

REGAN: This house is small; there isn't room for Lear and his soldiers.

GONERIL: Where is the Duke of Gloucester?

CORNWALL: He followed Lear.

[Gloucester enters.] Here he is.

GLOUCESTER: The King is very angry. He has called for his horse.

CORNWALL: Let him go. He won't listen to anyone.

GONERIL: Yes, don't try to stop him

GLOUCESTER: But it is nearly night and strong winds are blowing. There is nowhere to shelter for many kilometres.

REGAN: That will teach him a lesson. Lock the doors. He has his soldiers with him, and who knows what they'll persuade him to do.

CORNWALL: Regan is right. Lock the doors, it's a wet night. Come in out of the storm.

[They exit.]

[In a field in the countryside. The storm continues. Kent enters with a soldier.]

KENT: Who's there, in this terrible weather? Where's the King?

SOLDIER: He's fighting with the wind and the rain. This terrible night would make a bear hide in a cave, but the King is running around outside without even a hat.

KENT: But who's with him?

SOLDIER: Only the Fool, who tries to make him happier with his jokes.

KENT: Sir, I trust you. I have got something to tell you. There's a disagreement between the Dukes of Albany and Cornwall. They both have servants who are really spies for the King of France. They have noticed that the Dukes are both against the King. Now the King of France has sent an army, and the French have spies at some of our ports. If you trust me, go quickly to Dover. There are people there who'll thank you when you tell them about the King's problems. I'm not the person who you think. I'm really an important man. If you see Cordelia, show her this ring, and she'll tell you who I am. Here's some money. Oh, this storm! I must go and find the King.

(They exit)

Exercises on KING LEAR Act II Scene III / Act III scene I

Choose the correct answer:

1-A/An.....is a person who tries to get secret information about a country, organization, or person, especially somebody who is employed by a government or the police.

(soldier – actor – spy – archaeologist)

2-A place that will protect you from bad weather means.....

(prison – cell – jail – shelter)

- 3-Something that you tell other people to make them laugh is a / an.....
(**lock – aim – joke – note**)
- 4-A / An.....means very bad weather with strong winds and rain, and often thunder and lightning.
(**cloud – earthquake – storm – eruption**)
- 5-He went to prison because he.....for another country for years.
(**spoiled – spied – tried – tied**)
- 6-.....people behave in a way that is not polite and is likely to offend others.
(**Well-mannered – Moral – Rude – Polite**)
- 7-We must encourage children to exercise.....and make their own decisions.
(**choice – choose – chosen – chose**)
- 8-My bedroom is so small that there isn't enough.....for a desk.
(**room – home – house – flat**)
- 9-We had a.....about which film to watch, but I let him watch a comedy.
(**agreement – disagreement – entertainment – discouragement**)
- 10-Ramy is my best friend. He has a lot of....., so he never gets angry.
(**patient – patience – friendly – grief**)
- 11-Your brother makes us laugh when he tells funny.....
(**swords – miles – jokes – guns**)
- 12-I asked Hany to.....to Faris for shouting.
(**recognize – apologise – answer – look**)
- 13-While driving my car, I couldn't see anything ahead because there was a dust.....
(**earthquake – volcano – storm – fig**)
- 14-Hoda finally managed to.....her father to let her go out with her friends.
(**make – dissuade – persuade – insist**)
- 15-.....on the streets are known to ask people for money and food.
(**Shelters – Beggars – Baggers – Tigers**)
- 16-Don't go out now. A strong wind is going to.....
(**blow – rain – rise – set**)
- 17-Clothes or building that are.....can keep in heat or keep out cold.
(**mild – wild – warm – worm**)
- 18-In the past, criminals were locked in the.....as a form of punishment.
(**sticks – stakes – stocks – spokes**)
- 19-His wife's death affected him badly and he.....mad.
(**made – came – went – took**)
- 20-While climbing the mountain, they stayed for a night in a / an.....to protect themselves from heavy rains.
(**inn – stream – cave – office**)
- 21-They.....their eyes on the criminal to know his partners.
(**sit – met – set – bit**)
- 22-You should apologise.....your elder sister now.
(**for – to – of – about**)

King Lear Act III scene II,III,IV**New Vocabulary**

| | | | |
|----------------|-----------------|-------------------------|------------------|
| forgive | يسامح | dead | ميت |
| cruel to | قاسى مع | troch | كشاف |
| hut | كوخ | mice | فئران |
| shelter | مأوى / يأوى | apart from | باستثناء |
| rest | راحة / يستريح | lock | يغلق / قفل |
| hard-hearted | قاس القلب | ready for | مستعد ل |
| force | يجبر | accept | يقبل |
| straw | قش | offer | عرض |
| horrible | فظيع / رهيب | philosopher | فيلسوف |
| sleep on | ينام على | research | بحث / يبحث |
| behave | يسلك | kill | يقتل |
| disagreement | عدم اتفاق | die | يموت |
| dangerous | خطير | death | موت / حالة وفاة |
| careful | حريص | point to | يشير الى |
| immediately | فى الحال | lightning | البرق |
| reward | مكافأة / يكافىء | rise | تشرق / ينهض |
| get rewarded | يحصل على مكافأة | burn | يحرقى |
| win the trust | يكسب ثقة | fall | يسقط |
| lose the trust | يفقد ثقة | go into | يدخل |
| impossible for | مستحيل على | walk in someone's shoes | يكون فى مكان شخص |
| go mad | يصاب بالجنون | walking fire | نار متحركة |
| homeless | بلا مأوى | footprints | أثار أقدام |
| hungry | جائع | army | جيش |
| stomach | معدة | keep away from | يبعد عن |
| rich | غنى | keep warm | يبقى دافئا |
| try walking in | يجرب المشى فى | come out of | يخرج من |
| shoes | حذاء | accept his offer | يقبل عروض |
| frightened | خائف | blanket | بطانية |
| disguise | يتنكر | servant | خادم |
| try | يجرب | proud | فخور |

Act III scene II,III,IV

[In another part of the field. The storm continues. King Lear enters with the Fool.]

KING LEAR: Blow winds, and let the rain fill our houses with water! Let lightning cut a tree in two, and burn my white hair!

FOOL: Oh, old man, go inside, and ask your daughters to forgive you!

KING LEAR: I'm a poor, weak old man. Why is the weather being cruel to me, like my daughters?

[Kent enters.]

KING LEAR: Who's there?

FOOL: Ah, here's someone who is both a wise man and a fool.

KENT: Oh no, why are you here? Even bears want to stay in their caves on a night like this. There's so much wind and rain! The storm is terrible. Your majesty, there's a poor man's but near here. It will shelter you from the storm. Stay there and rest, while I go to the house of your hardhearted daughters.

KING LEAR: When I asked for you, they did not let me in their house, so I'll force them to allow you in. But I think I'm going mad! .-[To the Fool] How are you, my boy? I'm cold. Where's the straw? It's strange how I now want to have horrible things such as a bed of straw to sleep on!

[King Lear exits with Kent]

[At Gloucester's castle. Gloucester enters with Edmund]

GLOUCESTER: Oh, Edmund, I don't like the way Goneril and Regan are behaving with their father! When I asked them to help Lear, they told me not to talk about him or to look after him. **EDMUND:** That's very cruel of them!

GLOUCESTER: Go to them; but do not say anything. There is some disagreement between the two Dukes, and maybe something even worse than that. I got a letter tonight **[To himself]** No, it's too dangerous to talk about it to him. **[To Edmund.]** I have locked the letter in my bedroom. Some of the French army have already arrived in England. We must help King Lear. I will go and look for him and help him. You go and talk to the Duke of Cornwall and do not tell him where I am. If he asks for me, tell him I'm ill and have gone to bed. Strange things are happening, Edmund. Please be careful.

[He exits.]

EDMUND: **[To himself]** I'll go and tell the Duke immediately about your worries for the King, father. I will tell him about that letter, too. Then I'll get rewarded for this, and I'll win the trust that my father loses. The younger man rises as the old man falls! **He exits.**

[In a field in front of a hut. King Lear enters with Kent and the Fool.]

KENT: Here is a hut where we can shelter, my lord. Please, go inside. This terrible storm makes it impossible for anyone to stay outside.

KING LEAR: Oh, my cruel children! You sent me out into a terrible storm like this. Oh Regan, Goneril! Your kind old father gave you everything! But I'll go mad if I think about this. I won't think about it anymore!

KENT: Please, go inside.

KING LEAR: **[To the Fool.]** You go in first, my boy.

[The Fool goes into the hut.]

Poor homeless people, you are always outside when there's a cruel storm. How can your hungry stomachs and old clothes help you when it rains? Why have I not thought about this before? Rich people should try walking in a poor person's shoes, and then the world would be a better place for us all.

[The Fool enters. He has just come out of the hut and he's very frightened]

FOOL Don't go in there, sir. There's a mad man in that hut.

KENT: Who's in there?

FOOL: A mad man! He says his name is Poor Tom.

KENT: Who are you? Come out here.

Edgar enters disguised as a madman called Poor Tom.

EDGAR: Keep away from me

KING LEAR: Are you mad like me? Have you given everything to your two daughters?

EDGAR: Nobody gives anything to Poor Tom.

KING LEAR: Have his daughters done this to him? **[To Edgar.]** Don't you have anything?

FOOL: No, he only has a blanket.

KING LEAR: Only cruel daughters could have made a man so poor. Who were you?

EDGAR: I was a servant, who was very proud.

KING LEAR: It would be better if you were dead than go around, with nothing but a blanket on a night like this!

FOOL: Look, here comes a walking fire.

[Gloucester enters carrying a torch]

KING LEAR: Who's this?

GLOUCESTER: What's your name?

EDGAR: My name is Poor Tom, and I once had six shirts to wear and a horse to ride, but now all I have is mice to eat.

GLOUCESTER: Has your majesty nobody to help you apart from this mad man? Why have our children grown up to be so terrible, my lord? Why do they hate their fathers?

EDGAR: Poor Tom's cold.

GLOUCESTER: Come inside with me, your majesty. I didn't want to do what your cruel daughters asked me to do. They asked me to lock the doors and leave you outside on this terrible night. I've come to find you and take you home, where there's a fire and food ready for you.

KENT: My lord, please accept this man's offer and go to the house.

KING LEAR: First, let me talk to this philosopher. What are you researching?

EDGAR: I am researching how to keep warm and to kill mice.

KENT: **[To Gloucester.]** Ask him again, my lord. He's beginning to go mad. He thinks the poor man is a philosopher.

[Gloucester holds his torch in front of him and looking at Edgar and Kent, but they are both disguised.]

GLOUCESTER: I'm not surprised Lear is mad. His daughters want him to die. Ah, that good man, Kent! He knew what would happen — the poor man! I'm almost mad myself. I have a son who tried to kill me. No father loved his son more than I loved him. What a night this is! Please, your majesty, come with me.

EDGAR: Tom's cold.

GLOUCESTER: Go into your hut, Tom; keep yourself warm.

KENT: This way, your majesty.

KING LEAR: **[Pointing to Edgar.]** I am going with him.

KENT: My lord, let him bring the poor man with us.

GLOUCESTER: OK. Sir, come on; come with us.

KING LEAR: Let's go then, my good philosopher. **[They exit.]**

Exercises on KING LEAR Act III scene II,III,IV

Choose the correct answer:

1-To help their family and pay for their education, some of the poor university students work as domestic.....

(masters – servants – princesses – landlords)

2-We need to put these plants next to the wall to.....them from the wind and direct sunlight.

(colour – shelter – provide – kidnap)

3-A.....is a light you can carry to help you see when it's dark.

(torch – pile – website – hut)

4-We got lost in the desert and spent the night in a wooden.....

(tone – hut – palace – website)

5-The old tree behind our house burnt down when it was struck by...during last night's storm.

(lightning – thunder – downpour – torch)

6-The old woman locked the poor child for two days without food. What a / an..... woman she is!

(stone-faced / hard-hearted / soft-hearted / kind-hearted)

7-Kamal should be a.....when he grows up because he likes to think about important questions.

(farmer – barber – philosopher – diver)

8-When you stop being angry with someone and stop blaming them, although they have done something wrong, you actually.....them.

(upload – regret – forgive – treat)

9-.....people need to be provided with somewhere to stay when the weather is cold.

(Homeless – Careless – Faithless – Harmless)

10-The young man.....himself using a wig, false beard and dark sunglasses.

(realized – advised – organized – disguised)

11-A.....stomach, an empty pocket and a broken hear can teach the best lessons of life.

(promising – sheltered – hungry – full)

12-Supplies of food, medicine and.....were sent to help survivors of all flood.

(agreements – caves – blankets – straws)

13-The robbers.....the poor shop assistant to hand over the money.

(forced – had – behaved – let)

14-A deep breath out that shows you are tired, sad or disappointed means a /an.....

(sigh – end – sign – idea)

15-A / An.....means light you can carry to help you to see.

(lightning – torch – edition – flash)

16-A person who studies and thinks about the meaning of life means a/ an.....

(archaeologist – therapist – educationalist – philosopher)

17-To.....means to stop feeling angry with someone who does something wrong, annoy, or upset you; to stop feeling angry with yourself.

(remember – remain – forgive – revenge)

18-A small building usually with one room means a/ an.....

(hut – establishment – charity – are)

19-Dry yellow wheat used to feed animals means.....

(sand – straw – grains – bills)

20-Who had lunch in a restaurant downtown yesterday, but it wasn't good and my..... hurt me badly.

(hand – knee – elbow – stomach)

General Exercises on Act II&III

Choose the correct answer

1. Although they..... the price, he refused to sell the old car
a. reduced b. doubled c. decreased d. limited
2. Do you know that camels can..... being thirsty for 15 days ?
a. tear b. protect c. defend d. bear
3. It is not accepted to your back on someone while talking with him.
a. turn b. replace c. change d. run
4. Finally, they managed to here. It was a long tiring journey.
a. give b. get c. take d. make
5. Do you agree to help us or you will..... your mind ?
a. change b. replace c. correct d. charge
6. She called..... for help when the thieves grabbed her bag.
a. in b. on c. out d. with
7. The weather was very bad yesterday. I was afraid of the thunder and the.....
a. lightening b. lightness c. lighthouse d. lightning
8. When I entered the kitchen, there were muddy on the floor. Someone entered and walked in the kitchen while we were out.
a. fingerprints b. footprints c. footpath d. fingernails
9. To means to make a secret plan to do something that is wrong to another person.
a. plot for b. protect from c. escape from d. plot against
10. To be loyal, continue to support someone means to be.....
a. hateful b. respectful c. helpful d. faithful
11. To means to get someone to do something or agree with you.
a. persuade b. delete c. determine d. spy
12. A place where ships enter and leave a town or country means a/an
a. station b. establishment c. port d. organization
13. means bright light that comes in the sky in a storm.
a. Thunder b. Hurricane c. Volcano d. Lightning
14. A group of things put on top of each other means a/an.....
a. collection b. option c. pile d. addition
15. To..... means to ask for something in a way that shows you need it very much.
a. beg b. bring c. sting d. dig
16. means a situation where people don't agree about something and often argue.
a. Agreement b. Disagreement c. Management d. Employment
17. A large hole in the side of a hill or under the ground means a/an
a. cave b. oasis c. gulf d. island

تم بحمد الله